INFORMATION MANUAL

1980

Cessna
SALES AND SERVICE

MODEL
R172K

HAWK XP

NOTICE

AT THE TIME OF ISSUANCE, THIS INFORMATION MANUAL WAS AN EXACT DUPLICATE OF THE OFFICIAL PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL AND IS TO BE USED FOR GENERAL PURPOSES ONLY.

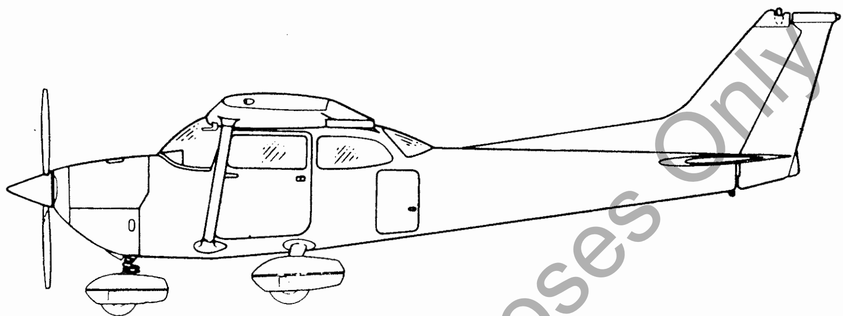
IT WILL NOT BE KEPT CURRENT AND, THEREFORE, CANNOT BE USED AS A SUBSTITUTE FOR THE OFFICIAL PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL INTENDED FOR OPERATION OF THE AIRPLANE.

CESSNA AIRCRAFT COMPANY
1 JULY 1979

PERFORMANCE - SPECIFICATIONS

SPEED:		
Maximum at Sea Level		133 KNOTS
Cruise, 80% Power at 6000 Ft		130 KNOTS
CRUISE: Recommended lean mixture with fuel allowance for engine start, taxi, takeoff, climb and 45 minutes reserve.		
80% Power at 6000 Ft	Range	440 NM
49 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	3.4 HRS
80% Power at 6000 Ft	Range	635 NM
66 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	4.9 HRS
Maximum Range at 10,000 Ft	Range	575 NM
49 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	6.1 HRS
Maximum Range at 10,000 Ft	Range	815 NM
66 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	8.7 HRS
RATE OF CLIMB AT SEA LEVEL		870 FPM
SERVICE CEILING		17,000 FT
TAKEOFF PERFORMANCE:		
Ground Roll		800 FT
Total Distance Over 50-Ft Obstacle		1360 FT
LANDING PERFORMANCE:		
Ground Roll		620 FT
Total Distance Over 50-Ft Obstacle		1270 FT
STALL SPEED (CAS):		
Flaps Up, Power Off		53 KNOTS
Flaps Down, Power Off		46 KNOTS
MAXIMUM WEIGHT:		
Ramp		2558 LBS
Takeoff or Landing		2550 LBS
STANDARD EMPTY WEIGHT:		
Hawk XP		1538 LBS
Hawk XP II		1565 LBS
MAXIMUM USEFUL LOAD:		
Hawk XP		1020 LBS
Hawk XP II		993 LBS
BAGGAGE ALLOWANCE		200 LBS
WING LOADING: Pounds/Sq Ft		14.7
POWER LOADING: Pounds/HP		13.1
FUEL CAPACITY: Total		
Standard Tanks		52 GAL.
Long Range Tanks		68 GAL.
OIL CAPACITY		9 QTS
ENGINE: Teledyne Continental, Fuel Injection 195 BHP at 2600 RPM		IO-360-KB
PROPELLER: Constant Speed, Diameter		76 IN.

INFORMATION MANUAL



CESSNA AIRCRAFT COMPANY

1980 MODEL R172K

THIS MANUAL INCORPORATES INFORMATION ISSUED THRU REVISION 1 TO THE PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL DATED 15 NOVEMBER 1979.

Cessna Aircraft Company
Wichita, Kansas USA

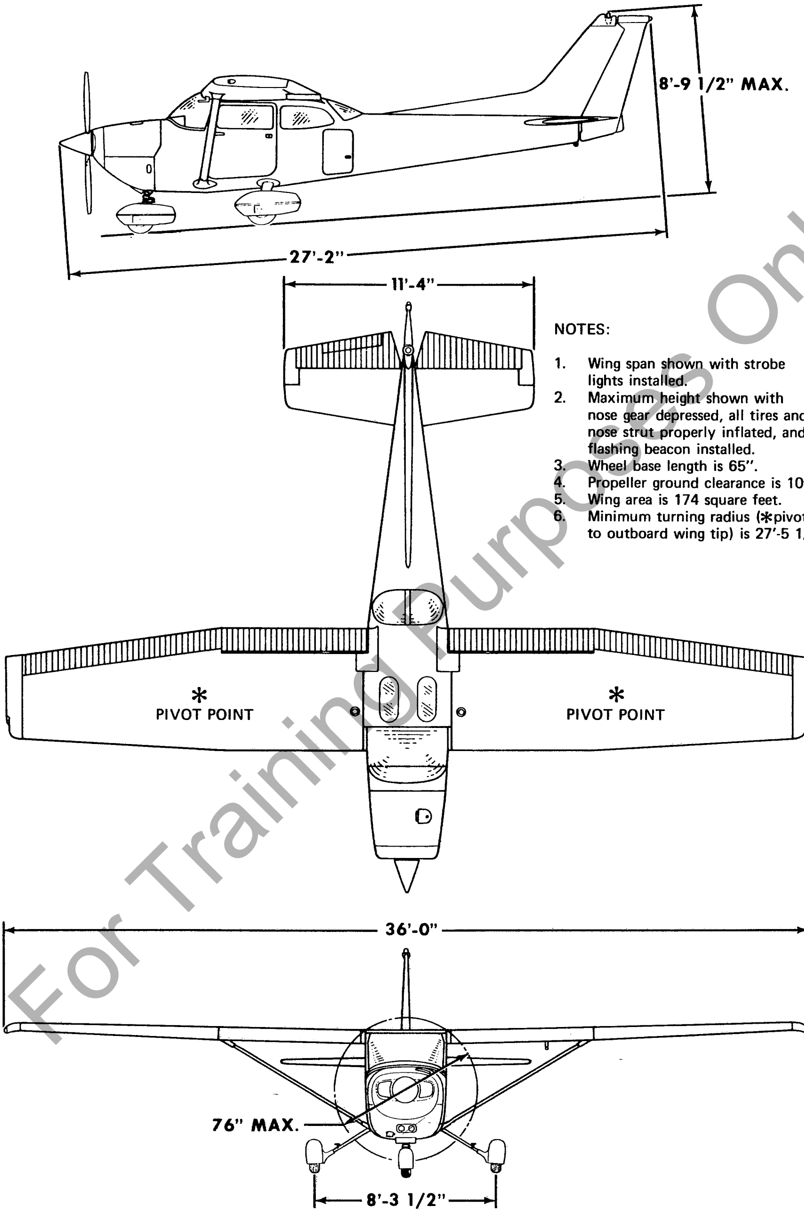
Member of GAMA

D1173-13

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1
GENERAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS



NOTES:

1. Wing span shown with strobe lights installed.
2. Maximum height shown with nose gear depressed, all tires and nose strut properly inflated, and flashing beacon installed.
3. Wheel base length is 65".
4. Propeller ground clearance is 10 3/4"
5. Wing area is 174 square feet.
6. Minimum turning radius (*pivot point to outboard wing tip) is 27'-5 1/2".

Figure 1-1. Three View

INTRODUCTION

This handbook contains 9 sections, and includes the material required to be furnished to the pilot by CAR Part 3. It also contains supplemental data supplied by Cessna Aircraft Company.

Section 1 provides basic data and information of general interest. It also contains definitions or explanations of symbols, abbreviations, and terminology commonly used.

DESCRIPTIVE DATA

ENGINE

Number of Engines: 1.
Engine Manufacturer: Teledyne Continental.
Engine Model Number: IO-360-KB.
Engine Type: Normally-aspirated, direct-drive, air-cooled, horizontally-opposed, fuel-injected, six-cylinder engine with 360 cu. in. displacement.
Horsepower Rating and Engine Speed: 195 rated BHP at 2600 RPM.

PROPELLER

Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Accessory Division.
Propeller Model Number: 2A34C203/90DCA-14.
Number of Blades: 2.
Propeller Diameter, Maximum: 76 inches.
Minimum: 74.5 inches.
Propeller Type: Constant speed and hydraulically actuated, with a low pitch setting of 12.0° and a high pitch setting of 25.1° (30 inch station).

FUEL

Approved Fuel Grades (and Colors):
100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
100 (Formerly 100/130) Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

NOTE

Isopropyl alcohol or ethylene glycol monomethyl ether may be added to the fuel supply. Additive concentrations shall not exceed 1% for isopropyl alcohol or .15% for ethylene glycol monomethyl ether. Refer to Section 8 for additional information.

Fuel Capacity:
Standard Tanks:
Total Capacity: 52 gallons.
Total Capacity Each Tank: 26 gallons.
Total Usable: 49 gallons.
Long Range Tanks:
Total Capacity: 68 gallons.
Total Capacity Each Tank: 34 gallons.
Total Usable: 66 gallons.

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity when refueling and minimize cross-feeding when parked on a sloping surface, place the fuel selector valve in either LEFT or RIGHT position.

OIL

Oil Grade (Specification):
MIL-L-6082 Aviation Grade Straight Mineral Oil: Use to replenish supply during first 25 hours and at the first 25-hour oil change. Continue to use until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized.

NOTE

The airplane was delivered from the factory with a corrosion preventive aircraft engine oil. This oil should be drained after the first 25 hours of operation.

Continental Motors Specification MHS-24 (and all revisions thereto), Ashless Dispersant Oil: This oil **must be used** after first 50 hours or oil consumption has stabilized.

Recommended Viscosity for Temperature Range:
SAE 20W-50 or SAE 50 above 40°F (4°C).
SAE 20W-50 or SAE 30 below 40°F (4°C).

NOTE

Multi-viscosity oil with a range of SAE 20W-50 is recommended for improved starting in cold weather.

Oil Capacity:
Sump: 8 Quarts.
Total: 9 Quarts.

MAXIMUM CERTIFICATED WEIGHTS

Ramp, Normal Category: 2558 lbs.
Utility Category: 2208 lbs.
Takeoff, Normal Category: 2550 lbs.
Utility Category: 2200 lbs.
Landing, Normal Category: 2550 lbs.
Utility Category: 2200 lbs.
Weight in Baggage Compartment, Normal Category:
Baggage Area 1 or Passenger on Child's Seat - (Baggage, Station 82 to 108, 200 lbs. maximum; Passenger on Child's Seat, 120 lbs. maximum). See note below.
Baggage Area 2 - Station 108 to 142: 50 lbs. See note below.

NOTE

The maximum combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 200 lbs.

Weight in Baggage Compartment, Utility Category: In this category, the baggage compartment and rear seat must not be occupied.

STANDARD AIRPLANE WEIGHTS

Standard Empty Weight, Hawk XP: 1538 lbs.
Hawk XP II: 1565 lbs.
Maximum Useful Load:

	Normal Category	Utility Category
Hawk XP:	1020 lbs.	670 lbs.
Hawk XP II:	993 lbs.	643 lbs.

CABIN AND ENTRY DIMENSIONS

Detailed dimensions of the cabin interior and entry door openings are illustrated in Section 6.

BAGGAGE SPACE AND ENTRY DIMENSIONS

Dimensions of the baggage area and baggage door opening are illustrated in detail in Section 6.

SPECIFIC LOADINGS

Wing Loading: 14.7 lbs./sq. ft.
Power Loading: 13.1 lbs./hp.

SYMBOLS, ABBREVIATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

GENERAL AIRSPEED TERMINOLOGY AND SYMBOLS

KCAS — **Knots Calibrated Airspeed** is indicated airspeed corrected for position and instrument error and expressed in knots. Knots calibrated airspeed is equal to KTAS in standard atmosphere at sea level.

KIAS — **Knots Indicated Airspeed** is the speed shown on the airspeed indicator and expressed in knots.

KTAS — **Knots True Airspeed** is the airspeed expressed in knots relative to undisturbed air which is KCAS corrected for altitude and temperature.

V_A — **Manuevering Speed** is the maximum speed at which you may use abrupt control travel.

V_{FE} — **Maximum Flap Extended Speed** is the highest speed permissible with wing flaps in a prescribed extended position.

V_{NO} — **Maximum Structural Cruising Speed** is the speed that should not be exceeded except in smooth air, then only with caution.

V_{NE} — **Never Exceed Speed** is the speed limit that may not be exceeded at any time.

V_S — **Stalling Speed or the minimum steady flight speed** at which the airplane is controllable.

V_{S_o} — **Stalling Speed or the minimum steady flight speed** at which the airplane is controllable in the landing configuration at the most forward center of gravity.

V_X — **Best Angle-of-Climb Speed** is the speed which results in the greatest gain of altitude in a given horizontal distance.

V_Y — **Best Rate-of-Climb Speed** is the speed which results in the greatest gain in altitude in a given time.

METEOROLOGICAL TERMINOLOGY

OAT — **Outside Air Temperature** is the free air static temperature.

It is expressed in either degrees Celsius or degrees Fahrenheit.

Standard Temperature	**Standard Temperature** is 15°C at sea level pressure altitude and decreases by 2°C for each 1000 feet of altitude.
Pressure Altitude	**Pressure Altitude** is the altitude read from an altimeter when the altimeter's barometric scale has been set to 29.92 inches of mercury (1013 mb).

ENGINE POWER TERMINOLOGY

BHP	**Brake Horsepower** is the power developed by the engine.
RPM	**Revolutions Per Minute** is engine speed.
MP	**Manifold Pressure** is a pressure measured in the engine's induction system and is expressed in inches of mercury (Hg).

AIRPLANE PERFORMANCE AND FLIGHT PLANNING TERMINOLOGY

Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity	**Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity** is the velocity of the crosswind component for which adequate control of the airplane during takeoff and landing was actually demonstrated during certification tests. The value shown is not considered to be limiting.
Usable Fuel	**Usable Fuel** is the fuel available for flight planning.
Unusable Fuel	**Unusable Fuel** is the quantity of fuel that can not be safely used in flight.
GPH	**Gallons Per Hour** is the amount of fuel (in gallons) consumed per hour.
NMPG	**Nautical Miles Per Gallon** is the distance (in nautical miles) which can be expected per gallon of fuel consumed at a specific engine power setting and/or flight configuration.
g	**g** is acceleration due to gravity.

WEIGHT AND BALANCE TERMINOLOGY

Reference Datum	**Reference Datum** is an imaginary vertical plane from which all horizontal distances are measured for balance purposes.
Station	**Station** is a location along the airplane fuselage given in terms of the distance from the reference datum.
Arm	**Arm** is the horizontal distance from the reference datum to the center of gravity (C.G.) of an item.
Moment	**Moment** is the product of the weight of an item multiplied by its arm. (Moment divided by the constant 1000 is used in this handbook to simplify balance calculations by reducing the number of digits.)
Center of Gravity (C.G.)	**Center of Gravity** is the point at which an airplane, or equipment, would balance if suspended. Its distance from the reference datum is found by dividing the total moment by the total weight of the airplane.
C.G. Arm	**Center of Gravity Arm** is the arm obtained by adding the airplane's individual moments and dividing the sum by the total weight.
C.G. Limits	**Center of Gravity Limits** are the extreme center of gravity locations within which the airplane must be operated at a given weight.
Standard Empty Weight	**Standard Empty Weight** is the weight of a standard airplane, including unusable fuel, full operating fluids and full engine oil.
Basic Empty Weight	**Basic Empty Weight** is the standard empty weight plus the weight of optional equipment.
Useful Load	**Useful Load** is the difference between ramp weight and the basic empty weight.
Maximum Ramp Weight	**Maximum Ramp Weight** is the maximum weight approved for ground maneuver. (It includes the weight of start, taxi and runup fuel.)
Maximum Takeoff Weight	**Maximum Takeoff Weight** is the maximum weight approved for the start of the takeoff run.

Maximum Landing Weight	**Maximum Landing Weight** is the maximum weight approved for the landing touchdown.
Tare	**Tare** is the weight of chocks, blocks, stands, etc. used when weighing an airplane, and is included in the scale readings. Tare is deducted from the scale reading to obtain the actual (net) airplane weight.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Section 2 includes operating limitations, instrument markings, and basic placards necessary for the safe operation of the airplane, its engine, standard systems and standard equipment. The limitations included in this section and in Section 9 have been approved by the Federal Aviation Administration. Observance of these operating limitations is required by Federal Aviation Regulations.

NOTE

Refer to Section 9 of this Pilot's Operating Handbook for amended operating limitations, operating procedures, performance data and other necessary information for airplanes equipped with specific options.

NOTE

The airspeeds listed in the Airspeed Limitations chart (figure 2-1) and the Airspeed Indicator Markings chart (figure 2-2) are based on Airspeed Calibration data shown in Section 5 with the normal static source. If the alternate static source is being used, ample margins should be observed to allow for the airspeed calibration variations between the normal and alternate static sources as shown in Section 5.

Your Cessna is certificated under FAA Type Certificate No. 3A17 as Cessna Model No. R172K.

AIRSPEED LIMITATIONS

Airspeed limitations and their operational significance are shown in figure 2-1. Maneuvering speeds shown apply to normal category operations. The utility category maneuvering speed is 105 KIAS at 2200 pounds.

	SPEED	KCAS	KIAS	REMARKS
V_{NE}	Never Exceed Speed	161	163	Do not exceed this speed in any operation.
V_{NO}	Maximum Structural Cruising Speed	127	129	Do not exceed this speed except in smooth air, and then only with caution.
V_A	Maneuvering Speed: 2550 Pounds 2150 Pounds 1750 Pounds	 103 94 85	 104 95 85	Do not make full or abrupt control movements above this speed.
V_{FE}	Maximum Flap Extended Speed: 10° Flaps 10° - 40° Flaps	 108 84	 110 85	Do not exceed this speed with flaps down.
	Maximum Window Open Speed	161	163	Do not exceed this speed with windows open.

Figure 2-1. Airspeed Limitations

AIRSPEED INDICATOR MARKINGS

Airspeed indicator markings and their color code significance are shown in figure 2-2.

MARKING	KIAS VALUE OR RANGE	SIGNIFICANCE
White Arc	38 - 85	Full Flap Operating Range. Lower limit is maximum weight V_{S_O} in landing configuration. Upper limit is maximum speed permissible with flaps extended.
Green Arc	48 - 129	Normal Operating Range. Lower limit is maximum weight V_S at most forward C.G. with flaps retracted. Upper limit is maximum structural cruising speed.
Yellow Arc	129 - 163	Operations must be conducted with caution and only in smooth air.
Red Line	163	Maximum speed for all operations.

Figure 2-2. Airspeed Indicator Markings

POWER PLANT LIMITATIONS

Engine Manufacturer: Teledyne Continental.
Engine Model Number: IO-360-KB.
Engine Operating Limits for Takeoff and Continuous Operations:
Maximum Power: 195 BHP rating.
Maximum Engine Speed: 2600 RPM.
Maximum Cylinder Head Temperature: 460°F (238°C).
Maximum Oil Temperature: 240°F (116°C).
Oil Pressure, Minimum: 10 psi.
Maximum: 100 psi.
Fuel Pressure, Minimum: 3 psi.
Maximum: 17 psi (17 gal/hr).
Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Accessory Division.
Propeller Model Number: 2A34C203/90DCA-14.
Propeller Diameter, Maximum: 76 inches.
Minimum: 74.5 inches.
Propeller Blade Angle at 30 Inch Station, Low: 12.0°.
High: 25.1°.

POWER PLANT INSTRUMENT MARKINGS

Power plant instrument markings and their color code significance are shown in figure 2-3.

INSTRUMENT	RED LINE	GREEN ARC	RED LINE
	MINIMUM LIMIT	NORMAL OPERATING	MAXIMUM LIMIT
Tachometer	- - -	2200 - 2600 RPM	2600 RPM
Manifold Pressure	- - -	15 - 25 in. Hg	- - -
Oil Temperature	- - -	100^{o} - 240^{o}F	240^{o}F
Cylinder Head Temperature	- - -	200^{o} - 460^{o}F	460^{o}F
Fuel Flow (Pressure)	(3 psi)	4.5 - 11.5 gal/hr	17 gal/hr (17 psi)
Oil Pressure	10 psi	30 - 60 psi	100 psi
Fuel Quantity (Standard Tanks)	E (1.5 Gal. Unusable Each Tank)	- - -	- - -
Fuel Quantity (Long Range Tanks)	E (1.0 Gal. Unusable Each Tank)	- - -	- - -
Suction	- - -	4.5 - 5.4 in. Hg.	- - -

Figure 2-3. Power Plant Instrument Markings

WEIGHT LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Maximum Ramp Weight: 2558 lbs.
Maximum Takeoff Weight: 2550 lbs.
Maximum Landing Weight: 2550 lbs.

Maximum Weight in Baggage Compartment:
Baggage Area 1 or Passenger on Child's Seat - (Baggage, Station 82 to 108, 200 lbs. maximum; Passenger on Child's Seat 120 lbs. maximum). See note below.
Baggage Area 2 - Station 108 to 142: 50 lbs. See note below.

NOTE

The maximum combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 200 lbs.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Maximum Ramp Weight: 2208 lbs.
Maximum Takeoff Weight: 2200 lbs.
Maximum Landing Weight: 2200 lbs.
Maximum Weight in Baggage Compartment: In the utility category, the baggage compartment and rear seat must not be occupied.

CENTER OF GRAVITY LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Center of Gravity Range:
Forward: 35.0 inches aft of datum at 1950 lbs. or less, with straight line variation to 41.0 inches aft of datum at 2550 lbs.
Aft: 47.3 inches aft of datum at all weights.
Reference Datum: Lower portion of front face of firewall.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Center of Gravity Range:
Forward: 35.0 inches aft of datum at 1950 lbs. or less, with straight line variation to 37.5 inches aft of datum at 2200 lbs.
Aft: 40.5 inches aft of datum at all weights.
Reference Datum: Lower portion of front face of firewall.

MANEUVER LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

This airplane is certificated in both the normal and utility category. The normal category is applicable to aircraft intended for non-aerobatic operations. These include any maneuvers incidental to normal flying, stalls (except whip stalls), lazy eights, chandelles, and turns in which the angle of bank is not more than 60°. Aerobatic maneuvers, including spins, are not approved.

UTILITY CATEGORY

This airplane is not designed for purely aerobatic flight. However, in the acquisition of various certificates such as commercial pilot and flight instructor, certain maneuvers are required by the FAA. All of these maneuvers are permitted in this airplane when operated in the utility category.

In the utility category, the baggage compartment and rear seat must not be occupied. No aerobatic maneuvers are approved except those listed below:

MANEUVER	RECOMMENDED ENTRY SPEED*
Chandelles	110 knots
Lazy Eights	110 knots
Steep Turns	104 knots
Spins	Slow Deceleration
Stalls (Except Whip Stalls)	Slow Deceleration

*Abrupt use of the controls is prohibited above 104 knots.

Aerobatics that may impose high loads should not be attempted. The important thing to bear in mind in flight maneuvers is that the airplane is clean in aerodynamic design and will build up speed quickly with the nose down. Proper speed control is an essential requirement for execution of any maneuver, and care should always be exercised to avoid excessive speed which in turn can impose excessive loads. In the execution of all maneuvers, avoid abrupt use of controls. Intentional spins with flaps extended are prohibited.

FLIGHT LOAD FACTOR LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Flight Load Factors (Maximum Takeoff Weight - 2550 lbs.):

*Flaps Up	+3.8g, -1.52g
*Flaps Down	+3.0g

*The design load factors are 150% of the above, and in all cases, the structure meets or exceeds design loads.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Flight Load Factors (Maximum Takeoff Weight - 2200 lbs.):

*Flaps Up	+4.4g, -1.76g
*Flaps Down	+3.0g

*The design load factors are 150% of the above, and in all cases, the structure meets or exceeds design loads.

KINDS OF OPERATION LIMITS

The airplane is equipped for day VFR and may be equipped for night VFR and/or IFR operations. FAR Part 91 establishes the minimum required instrumentation and equipment for these operations. The reference to types of flight operations on the operating limitations placard reflects equipment installed at the time of Airworthiness Certificate issuance.

Flight into known icing conditions is prohibited.

FUEL LIMITATIONS

2 Standard Tanks: 26 U.S. gallons each.
 Total Fuel: 52 U.S. gallons.
 Usable Fuel (all flight conditions): 49 U.S. gallons.
 Unusable Fuel: 3 U.S. gallons.
2 Long Range Tanks: 34 U.S. gallons each.
 Total Fuel: 68 U.S. gallons.
 Usable Fuel (all flight conditions): 66 U.S. gallons.
 Unusable Fuel: 2 U.S. gallons.

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity when refueling and minimize cross-feeding when parked on a sloping surface, place the fuel selector valve in either LEFT or RIGHT position.

Fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel quantity indicator reads empty (red line) cannot be safely used in flight.

Approved Fuel Grades (and Colors):
 100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
 100 (Formerly 100/130) Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

OTHER LIMITATIONS

FLAP LIMITATIONS

Approved Takeoff Range: 0° to 15°.
Approved Landing Range: 0° to 40°.

PLACARDS

The following information must be displayed in the form of composite or individual placards.

1. In full view of the pilot: (The "DAY-NIGHT-VFR-IFR" entry, shown on the example below, will vary as the airplane is equipped.)

> The markings and placards installed in this airplane contain operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in the Normal Category. Other operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in this category or in the Utility Category are contained in the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.
>
> Normal Category - No acrobatic maneuvers, including spins, approved.
>
> Utility Category - No acrobatic maneuvers approved, except those listed in the Pilot's Operating Handbook.
>
> Baggage compartment and rear seat must not be occupied.
>
> Spin Recovery - Opposite rudder - forward elevator - neutralize controls.
>
> Flight into known icing conditions prohibited.
>
> This airplane is certified for the following flight operations as of date of original airworthiness certificate:
>
> DAY—NIGHT—VFR—IFR

2. Near wing flap switch:

> AVOID SLIPS WITH FLAPS EXTENDED

3. On the fuel selector plate (standard tanks):

BOTH - 49 GAL. LEFT - 24.5 GAL. RIGHT - 24.5 GAL. WHEN SWITCHING FROM DRY TANK TURN PUMP ON "HI" MOMENTARILY

On the fuel selector plate (long range tanks):

BOTH - 66 GAL. LEFT - 33 GAL. RIGHT - 33 GAL. WHEN SWITCHING FROM DRY TANK TURN PUMP ON "HI" MOMENTARILY

4. Near fuel tank filler cap (standard tanks):

FUEL 100LL/100 MIN. GRADE AVIATION GASOLINE CAP. 26 U.S. GAL.

Near fuel tank filler cap (long range tanks):

FUEL 100LL/100 MIN. GRADE AVIATION GASOLINE CAP. 34.0 U.S. GAL. CAP. 26.0 U.S. GAL. TO BOTTOM OF FILLER COLLAR

5. On control lock:

CONTROL LOCK REMOVE BEFORE STARTING ENGINE.

6. In baggage compartment:

200 POUNDS MAXIMUM
BAGGAGE OR 120 LBS AUX SEAT PASSENGER
FORWARD OF BAGGAGE DOOR LATCH

50 POUNDS MAXIMUM
BAGGAGE AFT OF BAGGAGE DOOR LATCH

MAXIMUM 200 POUNDS COMBINED

FOR ADDITIONAL LOADING INSTRUCTIONS
SEE WEIGHT AND BALANCE DATA

7. Near manifold pressure/fuel flow gage:

FUEL FLOW
AT FULL THROTTLE

	2600 RPM
SL	16 GPH
4000 FT	14 GPH
8000 FT	12 GPH
12000 FT	10 GPH

8. A calibration card is provided to indicate the accuracy of the magnetic compass in 30° increments.

9. On the flap control indicator:

0° to 10°	(Partial flap range with blue color code and 110 kt callout; also, mechanical detent at 10°.)
10° to 40°	(Indices at these positions with white color code and 85 kt callout; also, mechanical detent at 20°.)

10. Near the airspeed indicator:

MANEUVER SPEED 104 KIAS

11. On the oil filler cap:

OIL 8 QTS

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

Section 3 provides checklist and amplified procedures for coping with emergencies that may occur. Emergencies caused by airplane or engine malfunctions are extremely rare if proper preflight inspections and maintenance are practiced. Enroute weather emergencies can be minimized or eliminated by careful flight planning and good judgment when unexpected weather is encountered. However, should an emergency arise, the basic guidelines described in this section should be considered and applied as necessary to correct the problem. Emergency procedures associated with ELT and other optional systems can be found in Section 9.

AIRSPEEDS FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION

Engine Failure After Takeoff:	
Wing Flaps Up	70 KIAS
Wing Flaps Down	65 KIAS
Maneuvering Speed:	
2550 Lbs	104 KIAS
2150 Lbs	95 KIAS
1750 Lbs	85 KIAS
Maximum Glide:	
2550 Lbs	75 KIAS
2150 Lbs	69 KIAS
1750 Lbs	62 KIAS
Precautionary Landing With Engine Power	65 KIAS
Landing Without Engine Power:	
Wing Flaps Up	70 KIAS
Wing Flaps Down	65 KIAS

OPERATIONAL CHECKLISTS

ENGINE FAILURES

ENGINE FAILURE DURING TAKEOFF RUN

1. Throttle -- IDLE.
2. Brakes -- APPLY.
3. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT.
4. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.

5. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
6. Master Switch -- OFF.

ENGINE FAILURE IMMEDIATELY AFTER TAKEOFF

1. Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).
   65 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF (pull out).
4. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
5. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED (full down recommended).
6. Master Switch -- OFF.

ENGINE FAILURE DURING FLIGHT

1. Airspeed -- 75 KIAS.
2. Primer -- IN and LOCKED.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (push full in).
4. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
5. Mixture -- RICH.
6. Throttle -- 1/2 OPEN.
7. Auxiliary Fuel Pump -- LOW for 3-5 seconds then OFF.
8. Ignition Switch -- BOTH (or START if propeller is stopped).

FORCED LANDINGS

EMERGENCY LANDING WITHOUT ENGINE POWER

1. Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).
   65 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
2. Seat Belts and Shoulder Harnesses -- SECURE.
3. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
4. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF.
5. All Switches (except master switch) -- OFF.
6. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED (full down recommended).
7. Master Switch -- OFF.
8. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO TOUCHDOWN.
9. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
10. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.

PRECAUTIONARY LANDING WITH ENGINE POWER

1. Seat Belts and Shoulder Harnesses -- SECURE.
2. Wing Flaps -- 20°.
3. Airspeed -- 65 KIAS.

4. Selected Field -- FLY OVER, noting terrain and obstructions, then retract flaps upon reaching a safe altitude and airspeed.
5. Avionics Power Switch and Electrical Switches -- OFF.
6. Wing Flaps -- FULL DOWN (on final approach).
7. Airspeed -- 65 KIAS.
8. Master Switch -- OFF.
9. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO TOUCHDOWN.
10. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
11. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
12. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.

DITCHING

1. Radio -- TRANSMIT MAYDAY on 121.5 MHz, giving location and intentions and SQUAWK 7700 if transponder is installed.
2. Heavy Objects (in baggage area) -- SECURE OR JETTISON.
3. Seat Belts and Shoulder Harnesses -- SECURE .
4. Wing Flaps -- 20° - 40°.
5. Power -- ESTABLISH 300 FT/MIN DESCENT AT 55 KIAS.
6. Approach -- High Winds, Heavy Seas -- INTO THE WIND.
   Light Winds, Heavy Swells -- PARALLEL TO SWELLS.

NOTE

If no power is available, approach at 65 KIAS with flaps up or at 60 KIAS with 10° flaps.

7. Cabin Doors -- UNLATCH.
8. Face -- CUSHION at touchdown with folded coat.
9. Touchdown -- LEVEL ATTITUDE AT ESTABLISHED RATE OF DESCENT.
10. Airplane -- EVACUATE through cabin doors. If necessary, open window and flood cabin to equalize pressure so doors can be opened.
11. Life Vests and Raft -- INFLATE.

FIRES

DURING START ON GROUND

1. Auxiliary Fuel Pump -- OFF.
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Parking Brake -- RELEASE.

4. Fire Extinguisher -- OBTAIN (have ground attendants obtain if not installed).
5. Airplane -- EVACUATE.
6. Fire -- EXTINGUISH.

NOTE

If sufficient ground personnel are available (and fire is on ground and not too dangerous) move airplane away from the fire by pushing rearward on the leading edge of the horizontal stabilizer.

7. Fire Damage -- INSPECT, repair damage or replace damaged components or wiring before conducting another flight.

ENGINE FIRE IN FLIGHT

1. Throttle -- CLOSE.
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF.
4. Master Switch -- OFF.
5. Cabin Heat and Air -- OFF (except overhead vents).
6. Airspeed -- 105 KIAS (If fire is not extinguished, increase glide speed to find an airspeed which will provide an incombustible mixture).
7. Forced Landing -- EXECUTE (as described in Emergency Landing Without Engine Power).

ELECTRICAL FIRE IN FLIGHT

1. Master Switch -- OFF.
2. Avionics Power Switch -- OFF.
3. All Other Switches (except ignition switch) -- OFF.
4. Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- CLOSED.
5. Fire Extinguisher -- ACTIVATE (if available).

WARNING

After discharging an extinguisher within a closed cabin, ventilate the cabin.

If fire appears out and electrical power is necessary for continuance of flight:

6. Master Switch -- ON.

7. Circuit Breakers -- CHECK for faulty circuit, do not reset.
8. Radio Switches -- OFF.
9. Avionics Power Switch -- ON.
10. Radio/Electrical Switches -- ON one at a time, with delay after each until short circuit is localized.
11. Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- OPEN when it is ascertained that fire is completely extinguished.

CABIN FIRE

1. Master Switch -- OFF.
2. Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- CLOSED (to avoid drafts).
3. Fire Extinguisher -- ACTIVATE (if available).

WARNING

After discharging an extinguisher within a closed cabin, ventilate the cabin.

4. Land the airplane as soon as possible to inspect for damage.

WING FIRE

1. Navigation Light Switch -- OFF.
2. Strobe Light Switch (if installed) -- OFF.
3. Pitot Heat Switch (if installed) -- OFF.

NOTE

Perform a sideslip to keep the flames away from the fuel tank and cabin, and land as soon as possible using flaps only as required for final approach and touchdown.

ICING

INADVERTENT ICING ENCOUNTER

1. Turn pitot heat switch ON (if installed).
2. Turn back or change altitude to obtain an outside air temperature that is less conducive to icing.
3. Pull cabin heat control full out to obtain maximum windshield defroster airflow.
4. Increase engine speed to minimize ice build-up on propeller blades.

5. Watch for signs of induction air filter ice and regain manifold pressure by increasing the throttle setting.
6. Plan a landing at the nearest airport. With an extremely rapid ice build-up, select a suitable "off airport" landing site.
7. With an ice accumulation of 1/4 inch or more on the wing leading edges, be prepared for significantly higher stall speed.
8. Leave wing flaps retracted. With a severe ice build-up on the horizontal tail, the change in wing wake airflow direction caused by wing flap extension could result in a loss of elevator effectiveness.
9. Open left window and, if practical, scrape ice from a portion of the windshield for visibility in the landing approach.
10. Perform a landing approach using a forward slip, if necessary, for improved visibility.
11. Approach at 80 to 90 KIAS depending upon the amount of the accumulation.
12. Perform a landing in level attitude.

STATIC SOURCE BLOCKAGE (Erroneous Instrument Reading Suspected)

1. Alternate Static Source Valve -- PULL ON.
2. Airspeed -- Consult appropriate calibration tables in Section 5 or climb and approach 3 knots faster than normal.
3. Altitude -- Cruise and approach 25 feet higher than normal.

LANDING WITH A FLAT MAIN TIRE

1. Approach -- NORMAL.
2. Wing Flaps -- FULL DOWN.
3. Touchdown -- GOOD TIRE FIRST, hold airplane off flat tire as long as possible with aileron control.

ELECTRICAL POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM MALFUNCTIONS

AMMETER SHOWS EXCESSIVE RATE OF CHARGE (Full Scale Deflection)

1. Alternator -- OFF.
2. Alternator Circuit Breaker -- PULL.
3. Nonessential Electrical Equipment -- OFF.
4. Flight -- TERMINATE as soon as practical.

LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHT ILLUMINATES DURING FLIGHT (Ammeter Indicates Discharge)

NOTE

Illumination of the low-voltage light may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the light will go out at higher RPM. The master switch need not be recycled since an over-voltage condition has not occurred to de-activate the alternator system.

1. Avionics Power Switch -- OFF.
2. Alternator Circuit Breaker -- CHECK IN.
3. Master Switch -- OFF (both sides).
4. Master Switch -- ON.
5. Low-Voltage Light -- CHECK OFF.
6. Avionics Power Switch -- ON.

If low-voltage light illuminates again:

7. Alternator -- OFF.
8. Nonessential Radio and Electrical Equipment -- OFF.
9. Flight -- TERMINATE as soon as practical.

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

ENGINE FAILURE

If an engine failure occurs during the takeoff run, the most important thing to do is stop the airplane on the remaining runway. Those extra items on the checklist will provide added safety after a failure of this type.

Prompt lowering of the nose to maintain airspeed and establish a glide attitude is the first response to an engine failure after takeoff. In most cases, the landing should be planned straight ahead with only small changes in direction to avoid obstructions. Altitude and airspeed are seldom sufficient to execute a 180° gliding turn necessary to return to the runway. The checklist procedures assume that adequate time exists to secure the fuel and ignition systems prior to touchdown.

After an engine failure in flight, the best glide speed as shown in figure 3-1 should be established as quickly as possible. While gliding toward a suitable landing area, an effort should be made to identify the cause of the failure. If time permits, an engine restart should be attempted as shown in the checklist. If the engine cannot be restarted, a forced landing without power must be completed.

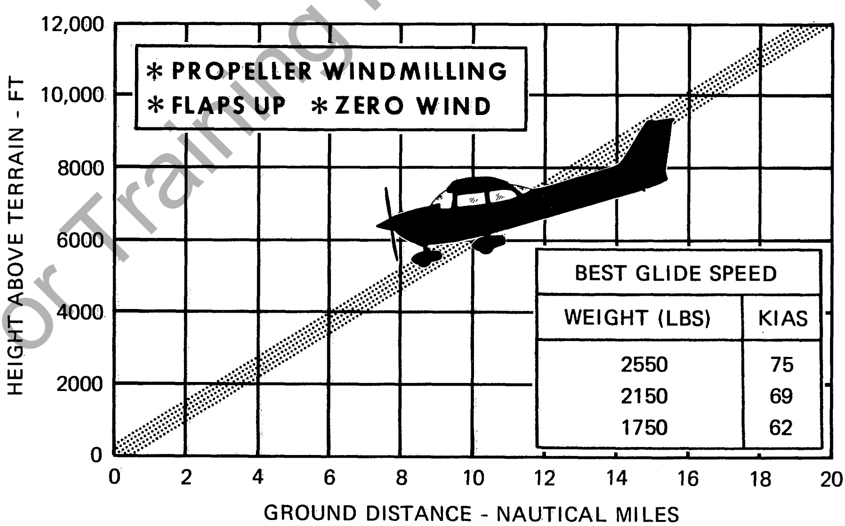


Figure 3-1. Maximum Glide

FORCED LANDINGS

If all attempts to restart the engine fail and a forced landing is imminent, select a suitable field and prepare for the landing as discussed under the Emergency Landing Without Engine Power checklist.

Before attempting an "off airport" landing with engine power available, one should fly over the landing area at a safe but low altitude to inspect the terrain for obstructions and surface conditions, proceeding as discussed under the Precautionary Landing With Engine Power checklist.

Prepare for ditching by securing or jettisoning heavy objects located in the baggage area and collect folded coats for protection of occupants' face at touchdown. Transmit Mayday message on 121.5 MHz giving location and intentions and squawk 7700 if a transponder is installed. Avoid a landing flare because of difficulty in judging height over a water surface.

LANDING WITHOUT ELEVATOR CONTROL

Trim for horizontal flight to an airspeed of approximately 65 KIAS with flaps set to 20° by using throttle and elevator trim control. Then **do not change the elevator trim control setting**; control the glide angle by adjusting power exclusively.

At flareout, the nose-down moment resulting from power reduction is an adverse factor and the airplane may hit on the nose wheel. Consequently, at flareout, the elevator trim control should be adjusted toward the full nose-up position and the power adjusted so that the airplane will rotate to the horizontal attitude for touchdown. Close the throttle at touchdown.

FIRES

Improper starting procedures involving the excessive use of auxiliary fuel pump operation can cause engine flooding and subsequent puddling of fuel on the parking ramp as the excess fuel drains overboard from the intake ports. This is sometimes experienced in difficult starts in cold weather where preheat service is not available. If this occurs, the airplane should be pushed away from the fuel puddle before another engine start is attempted. Otherwise, there is a possibility of raw fuel accumulations in the exhaust system igniting during an engine start, causing a long flame from the tailpipe, and possibly igniting the fuel puddle on the pavement. In the event that this occurs, proceed in accordance with the Fire During Start On Ground checklist.

Although engine fires are extremely rare in flight, the steps of the appropriate checklist should be followed if one is encountered. After completion of this procedure, execute a forced landing as soon as possible. Do not attempt to restart the engine.

The initial indication of an electrical fire is usually the odor of burning insulation. The checklist for this problem should result in elimination of the fire.

EMERGENCY OPERATION IN CLOUDS

(Vacuum System Failure)

In the event of a vacuum system failure during flight, the directional indicator and attitude indicator will be disabled, and the pilot will have to rely on the turn coordinator if he inadvertently flies into clouds. The following instructions assume that only the electrically-powered turn coordinator is operative, and that the pilot is not completely proficient in instrument flying.

EXECUTING A 180° TURN IN CLOUDS

Upon inadvertently entering the clouds, an immediate plan should be made to turn back as follows:

1. Note the compass heading.
2. Note the time of the minute hand and observe the position of the sweep second hand on the clock.
3. When the sweep second hand indicates the nearest half-minute, initiate a standard rate left turn, holding the turn coordinator symbolic airplane wing opposite the lower left index mark for 60 seconds. Then roll back to level flight by leveling the miniature airplane.
4. Check accuracy of the turn by observing the compass heading which should be the reciprocal of the original heading.
5. If necessary, adjust heading primarily with skidding motions rather than rolling motions so that the compass will read more accurately.
6. Maintain altitude and airspeed by cautious application of elevator control. Avoid overcontrolling by keeping the hands off the control wheel as much as possible and steering only with rudder.

EMERGENCY DESCENT THROUGH CLOUDS

If conditions preclude reestablishment of VFR flight by a 180° turn, a descent through a cloud deck to VFR conditions may be appropriate. If possible, obtain radio clearance for an emergency descent through clouds. To guard against a spiral dive, choose an easterly or westerly heading to minimize compass card swings due to changing bank angles. In addition, keep hands off the control wheel and steer a straight course with rudder control by monitoring the turn coordinator. Occasionally check the compass heading and make minor corrections to hold an approximate course. Before descending into the clouds, set up a stabilized let-down condition as follows:

1. Reduce power to set up a 500 to 800 ft/min rate of descent.
2. Adjust mixture as required for smooth engine operation.
3. Adjust the elevator trim and rudder trim for a stabilized descent at 75 KIAS.
4. Keep hands off the control wheel.
5. Monitor turn coordinator and make corrections by rudder alone.
6. Adjust rudder trim to relieve unbalanced rudder force, if present.
7. Check trend of compass card movement and make cautious corrections with rudder to stop the turn.
8. Upon breaking out of clouds, resume normal cruising flight.

RECOVERY FROM A SPIRAL DIVE

If a spiral is encountered, proceed as follows:

1. Close the throttle.
2. Stop the turn by using coordinated aileron and rudder control to align the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator with the horizon reference line.
3. Cautiously apply elevator back pressure to slowly reduce the airspeed to 75 KIAS.
4. Adjust the elevator trim control to maintain a 75 KIAS glide.
5. Keep hands off the control wheel, using rudder control to hold a straight heading. Use rudder trim to relieve unbalanced rudder force, if present.
6. Clear engine occasionally, but avoid using enough power to disturb the trimmed glide.
7. Upon breaking out of clouds, resume normal cruising flight.

INADVERTENT FLIGHT INTO ICING CONDITIONS

Intentional flight into known icing conditions is prohibited in this airplane. During instrument flight; however, icing conditions may be encountered inadvertently and therefore some corrective action will be required as shown in the checklists. Initiation of a climb is usually the best ice avoidance action to take; however, alternatives are descent to warmer air or to reverse course.

STATIC SOURCE BLOCKED

If erroneous instrument readings are suspected due to water, ice, or other foreign matter in the pressure lines going to the standard external static pressure sources, the alternate static source valve should be pulled on.

A calibration table is provided in Section 5 to illustrate the effect of the alternate static source on indicated airspeeds. With the windows and vents closed the airspeed indicator may typically read as much as 4 knots slower and the altimeter 50 feet lower in cruise. With the vents open and heater on, these variations increase to 7 knots slower and 50 feet lower respectively. If the alternate static source must be used for landing, airspeed errors of up to 10 knots slower with vents open and 4 knots slower with vents closed can be expected. Altimeter errors remain 50 feet low.

NOTE

> In an emergency on airplanes not equipped with an alternate static source, cabin pressure can be supplied to the static pressure instruments by breaking the glass in the face of the rate-of-climb indicator.

SPINS

Should an inadvertent spin occur, the following recovery procedure should be used:

1. RETARD THROTTLE TO IDLE POSITION.
2. PLACE AILERONS IN NEUTRAL POSITION.
3. APPLY AND **HOLD** FULL RUDDER OPPOSITE TO THE DIRECTION OF ROTATION.
4. JUST **AFTER** THE RUDDER REACHES THE STOP, MOVE THE CONTROL WHEEL **BRISKLY** FORWARD FAR ENOUGH TO BREAK THE STALL. Full down elevator may be required at aft center of gravity loadings to assure optimum recoveries.
5. **HOLD** THESE CONTROL INPUTS UNTIL ROTATION STOPS. Premature relaxation of the control inputs may extend the recovery.
6. AS ROTATION STOPS, NEUTRALIZE RUDDER, AND MAKE A SMOOTH RECOVERY FROM THE RESULTING DIVE.

NOTE

If disorientation precludes a visual determination of the direction of rotation, the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator may be referred to for this information.

For additional information on spins and spin recovery, see the discussion under SPINS in Normal Procedures (Section 4).

ROUGH ENGINE OPERATION OR LOSS OF POWER

SPARK PLUG FOULING

A slight engine roughness in flight may be caused by one or more spark plugs becoming fouled by carbon or lead deposits. This may be verified by turning the ignition switch momentarily from BOTH to either L or R position. An obvious power loss in single ignition operation is evidence of spark plug or magneto trouble. Assuming that spark plugs are the more likely cause, lean the mixture to the recommended lean setting for cruising flight. If the problem does not clear up in several minutes, determine if a richer mixture setting will produce smoother operation. If not, proceed to the nearest airport for repairs using the BOTH position of the ignition switch unless extreme roughness dictates the use of a single ignition position.

MAGNETO MALFUNCTION

A sudden engine roughness or misfiring is usually evidence of magneto problems. Switching from BOTH to either L or R ignition switch position will identify which magneto is malfunctioning. Select different power settings and enrichen the mixture to determine if continued operation on BOTH magnetos is practicable. If not, switch to the good magneto and proceed to the nearest airport for repairs.

If ignition system malfunctions occur at high altitude and high power, as evidenced by roughness and possible backfiring on one or both magnetos, the power should be reduced as required. This condition is an indication of excessive spark plug gaps which, in turn, causes arcing across the magneto points.

ENGINE-DRIVEN FUEL PUMP FAILURE

Failure of the engine-driven fuel pump will be evidenced by a sudden reduction in the fuel flow indication **prior to a loss of power,** while operating with adequate fuel in either or both fuel tanks.

In the event of an engine-driven fuel pump failure during takeoff, immediately **hold** the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position until the airplane is well clear of obstacles. Upon reaching a safe altitude, and reducing power to cruise settings, releasing the switch to the LOW position will then provide sufficient fuel flow to maintain engine operation while maneuvering for a landing.

If an engine-driven fuel pump failure occurs during cruising flight, apply full rich mixture and **hold** the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position to re-establish fuel flow. Then the LOW position of the fuel pump switch may be used to sustain level flight. If necessary, additional fuel flow is obtainable by holding the pump switch in the HIGH position. If either LOW or HIGH fuel pump switch positions results in rough engine operation lean the mixture as required for smooth operation.

LOW OIL PRESSURE

If low oil pressure is accompanied by normal oil temperature, there is a possibility the oil pressure gage or relief valve is malfunctioning. A leak in the line to the gage is not necessarily cause for an immediate precautionary landing because an orifice in this line will prevent a sudden loss of oil from the engine sump. However, a landing at the nearest airport would be advisable to inspect the source of trouble.

If a total loss of oil pressure is accompanied by a rise in oil temperature, there is good reason to suspect an engine failure is imminent. Reduce engine power immediately and select a suitable forced landing field. Use only the minimum power required to reach the desired touchdown spot.

ELECTRICAL POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM MALFUNCTIONS

Malfunctions in the electrical power supply system can be detected by periodic monitoring of the ammeter and low-voltage warning light; however, the cause of these malfunctions is usually difficult to determine. Broken or loose alternator wiring is most likely the cause of alternator failures, although other factors could cause the problem. A damaged or improperly adjusted alternator control unit can also cause malfunctions. Problems of this nature constitute an electrical emergency and should be dealt with immediately. Electrical power malfunctions usually fall into two categories: excessive rate of charge and insufficient rate of charge. The following paragraphs describe the recommended remedy for each situation.

EXCESSIVE RATE OF CHARGE

After engine starting and heavy electrical usage at low engine speeds (such as extended taxiing) the battery condition will be low enough to accept above normal charging during the initial part of a flight. However, after thirty minutes of cruising flight, the ammeter should be indicating less than two needle widths of charging current. If the charging rate were to remain above this value on a long flight, the battery would overheat and evaporate the electrolyte at an excessive rate.

Electronic components in the electrical system can be adversely affected by higher than normal voltage. The alternator control unit includes an over-voltage sensor which normally will automatically shut down the alternator if the charge voltage reaches approximately 31.5 volts. If the over-voltage sensor malfunctions or is improperly adjusted, as evidenced by an excessive rate of charge shown on the ammeter, the alternator should be turned off, alternator circuit breaker pulled, nonessential electrical equipment turned off and the flight terminated as soon as practical.

INSUFFICIENT RATE OF CHARGE

NOTE

Illumination of the low-voltage light and ammeter discharge indications may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system, such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the light will go out at higher RPM. The master switch need not be recycled since an over-voltage condition has not occurred to de-activate the alternator system.

If the over-voltage sensor should shut down the alternator, or if the alternator circuit breaker should trip, a discharge rate will be shown on the ammeter followed by illumination of the low-voltage warning light. Since this may be a "nuisance" trip-out, an attempt should be made to reactivate the alternator system. To do this, turn the avionics power switch off, check that the alternator circuit breaker is in, then turn both sides of the master switch off and then on again. If the problem no longer exists, normal alternator charging will resume and the low-voltage light will go off. The avionics power switch may then be turned back on. If the light illuminates again, a malfunction is confirmed. In this event, the flight should be terminated and/or the current drain on the battery minimized because the battery can supply the electrical system for only a limited period of time. If the emergency occurs at night, power must be conserved for later use of the landing lights and flaps during landing.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

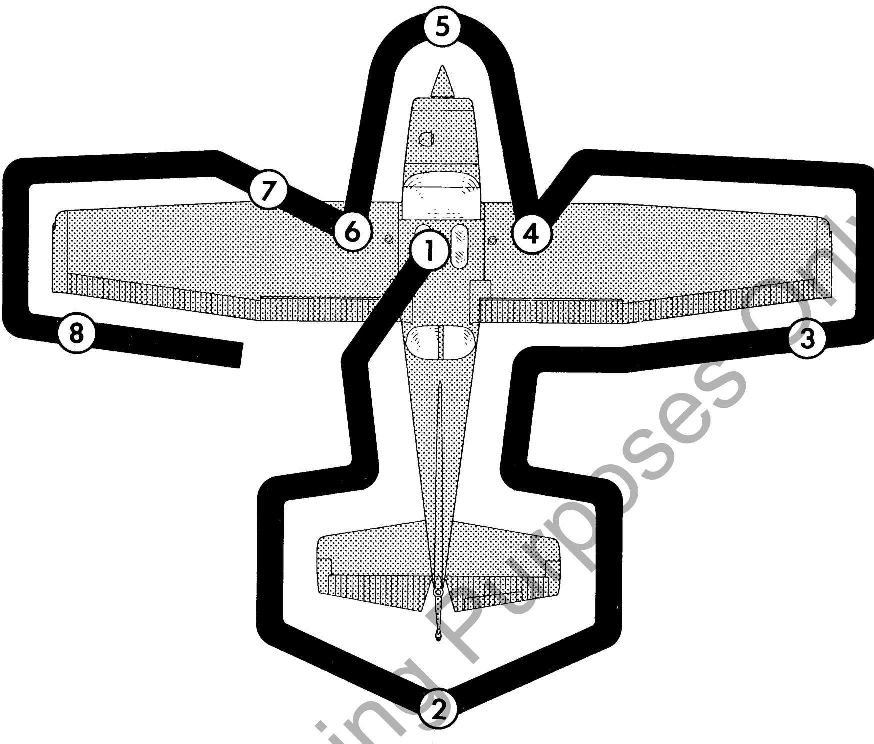
INTRODUCTION

Section 4 provides checklist and amplified procedures for the conduct of normal operation. Normal procedures associated with optional systems can be found in Section 9.

SPEEDS FOR NORMAL OPERATION

Unless otherwise noted, the following speeds are based on a maximum weight of 2550 pounds and may be used for any lesser weight. However, to achieve the performance specified in Section 5 for takeoff distance, the speed appropriate to the particular weight must be used.

Takeoff, Flaps Up:	
Normal Climb Out	75-85 KIAS
Short Field Takeoff, Flaps 10°, Speed at 50 Feet	58 KIAS
Enroute Climb, Flaps Up:	
Normal	85-95 KIAS
Best Rate of Climb, Sea Level	78 KIAS
Best Rate of Climb, 10,000 Feet	73 KIAS
Best Angle of Climb, Sea Level	57 KIAS
Best Angle of Climb, 10,000 Feet	63 KIAS
Landing Approach:	
Normal Approach, Flaps Up	65-75 KIAS
Normal Approach, Flaps 40°	60-70 KIAS
Short Field Approach, Flaps 40°	60 KIAS
Balked Landing:	
Maximum Power, Flaps 20°	55 KIAS
Maximum Recommended Turbulent Air Penetration Speed:	
2550 Lbs	104 KIAS
2150 Lbs	95 KIAS
1750 Lbs	85 KIAS
Maximum Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity:	
Takeoff and Landing	20 KNOTS



NOTE

Visually check airplane for general condition during walk-around inspection. In cold weather, remove even small accumulations of frost, ice or snow from wing, tail and control surfaces. Also, make sure that control surfaces contain no internal accumulations of ice or debris. Prior to flight, check that pitot heater (if installed) is warm to touch within 30 seconds with battery and pitot switches on. If a night flight is planned, check operation of all lights, and make sure a flashlight is available.

Figure 4-1. Preflight Inspection

CHECKLIST PROCEDURES

PREFLIGHT INSPECTION

1 CABIN

1. Pilot's Operating Handbook -- AVAILABLE IN THE AIRPLANE.
2. Control Wheel Lock -- REMOVE and STOW.
3. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
4. Avionics Power Switch -- OFF.
5. Master Switch -- ON.

WARNING

When turning on the master switch, using an external power source, or pulling the propeller through by hand, treat the propeller as if the ignition switch were on. Do not stand, nor allow anyone else to stand, within the arc of the propeller, since a loose or broken wire, or a component malfunction, could cause the propeller to rotate.

6. Fuel Quantity Indicators -- CHECK QUANTITY.
7. Master Switch -- OFF.
8. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (push full in).
9. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
10. Trim Controls -- NEUTRAL.
11. Static Pressure Alternate Source Valve (if installed) -- OFF.
12. Baggage Door -- CHECK for security, lock with key if child's seat is to be occupied.

2 EMPENNAGE

1. Rudder Gust Lock -- REMOVE.
2. Tail Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.
3. Control Surfaces -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.

3 RIGHT WING Trailing Edge

1. Aileron -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.

4 RIGHT WING

1. Wing Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.

2. Main Wheel Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation.
3. Before first flight of the day and after each refueling, use sampler cup and drain small quantity of fuel from fuel tank sump quick-drain valve to check for water, sediment, and proper fuel grade.
4. Fuel Quantity -- CHECK VISUALLY for desired level.
5. Fuel Filler Cap -- SECURE.

(5) NOSE

1. Before first flight of the day and after each refueling, use sampler cup and drain small quantity of fuel from fuel reservoir quick-drain valve to check for water, sediment, and proper fuel grade.
2. Static Source Openings (both sides of fuselage) -- CHECK for stoppage.
3. Propeller and Spinner -- CHECK for nicks, security and oil leaks.
4. Landing Lights -- CHECK for condition and cleanliness.
5. Nose Wheel Strut and Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation.
6. Nose Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.
7. Engine Oil Level -- CHECK. Do not operate with less than six quarts. Fill to eight quarts for extended flight.
8. Before first flight of the day and after each refueling, pull out strainer drain knob for about four seconds to clear fuel strainer of possible water and sediment. Check strainer drain closed. If water is observed, the fuel system may contain additional water, and further draining of the system at the strainer, fuel tank sumps, reservoir drain valve and fuel selector drain plug will be necessary.

(6) LEFT WING

1. Main Wheel Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation.
2. Before first flight of day and after each refueling, use sampler cup and drain small quantity of fuel from fuel tank sump quick-drain valve to check for water, sediment and proper fuel grade.
3. Fuel Quantity -- CHECK VISUALLY for desired level.
4. Fuel Filler Cap -- SECURE.

(7) LEFT WING Leading Edge

1. Pitot Tube Cover -- REMOVE and check opening for stoppage.
2. Fuel Tank Vent Opening -- CHECK for stoppage.
3. Stall Warning Opening -- CHECK for stoppage. To check the system, place a clean handkerchief over the vent opening and apply suction; a sound from the horn will confirm system operation.
4. Wing Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.

8 LEFT WING Trailing Edge

1. Aileron -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.

BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

1. Preflight Inspection -- COMPLETE.
2. Seats, Belts, Shoulder Harnesses -- ADJUST and LOCK.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (push full in).
4. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
5. Avionics Power Switch, Autopilot (if installed), Electrical Equipment -- OFF.

CAUTION

The avionics power switch must be OFF during engine start to prevent possible damage to avionics.

6. Brakes -- TEST and SET.
7. Cowl Flap -- OPEN (move lever inboard out of locking hole to reposition).
8. Circuit Breakers -- CHECK IN.

STARTING ENGINE

1. Mixture -- RICH.
2. Propeller -- HIGH RPM.
3. Throttle -- CLOSED.
4. Master Switch -- ON.
5. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- HIGH.
6. Throttle -- ADVANCE to obtain 8-10 GPH fuel flow then return to CLOSED position.
7. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.
8. Propeller Area -- CLEAR.
9. Ignition Switch -- START (release to BOTH when engine starts).

NOTE

The engine should start in two to three revolutions. If it does not continue running, start again at step 3 above. If the engine does not start, leave the auxiliary fuel pump switch off, set the mixture to idle cut-off, open the throttle, and crank until the engine fires (or for approximately 15 seconds). If still unsuccessful, start again using the normal starting procedure after allowing the starter motor to cool.

10. Throttle -- 800 to 1000 RPM.
11. Oil Pressure -- CHECK.
12. Flashing Beacon and Navigation Lights -- ON as required.
13. Avionics Power Switch -- ON.
14. Radios -- ON.

BEFORE TAKEOFF

1. Parking Brake -- SET.
2. Cabin Doors -- CLOSED and LOCKED.
3. Flight Controls -- FREE and CORRECT.
4. Flight Instruments -- SET.
5. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
6. Elevator and Rudder Trim -- SET.
7. Throttle -- 1800 RPM.
   a. Magnetos -- CHECK (RPM drop should not exceed 150 RPM on either magneto or 50 RPM differential between magnetos).
   b. Propeller -- CYCLE from high to low RPM; return to high RPM (full in).
   c. Engine Instruments and Ammeter -- CHECK.
   d. Suction Gage -- CHECK (4.5 to 5.4 In. Hg.).
   e. Throttle -- 1000 RPM or less.
8. Radios -- SET.
9. Autopilot (if installed) -- OFF.
10. Strobe Lights -- AS DESIRED.
11. Throttle Friction Lock -- ADJUST.
12. Brakes -- RELEASE.

TAKEOFF

NORMAL TAKEOFF

1. Wing Flaps -- 0°- 10° (10° preferred).
2. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM.
3. Mixture -- LEAN for field elevation per fuel flow placard.
4. Elevator Control -- LIFT NOSE WHEEL at 55 KIAS.
5. Climb Speed -- 75-85 KIAS.

SHORT FIELD TAKEOFF

1. Wing Flaps -- 10°.

2. Brakes -- APPLY.
3. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM.
4. Mixture -- LEAN for field elevation per fuel flow placard.
5. Brakes -- RELEASE.
6. Elevator Control -- MAINTAIN SLIGHTLY TAIL-LOW ATTITUDE.
7. Climb Speed -- 58 KIAS (until all obstacles are cleared).
8. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT after obstacles are cleared.

ENROUTE CLIMB

NORMAL CLIMB

1. Airspeed -- 85-95 KIAS.
2. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM.
3. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
4. Mixture -- LEAN for altitude per fuel flow placard.
5. Cowl Flap -- OPEN as required.

MAXIMUM PERFORMANCE CLIMB

1. Airspeed -- 78 KIAS at sea level to 73 KIAS at 10,000 feet.
2. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM.
3. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
4. Mixture -- LEAN for altitude per fuel flow placard.
5. Cowl Flap -- OPEN.

CRUISE

1. Power -- 15-25 INCHES Hg, 2200-2600 RPM (no more than 80% power).
2. Elevator and Rudder Trim -- ADJUST.
3. Mixture -- LEAN for cruise fuel flow using the EGT gage, Cessna Power Computer or the data in Section 5.
4. Cowl Flap -- CLOSED.

DESCENT

1. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
2. Power -- AS DESIRED.
3. Mixture -- ENRICHEN as required for engine smoothness.
4. Cowl Flap -- CLOSED.

BEFORE LANDING

1. Seats, Belts, Shoulder Harnesses -- ADJUST and LOCK.
2. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.

3. Propeller -- HIGH RPM.
4. Cowl Flap -- CLOSED.
5. Autopilot (if installed) -- OFF.

LANDING

NORMAL LANDING

1. Airspeed -- 65-75 KIAS (flaps UP).
2. Wing Flaps -- AS DESIRED (0° - 10° below 110 KIAS, 10° - 40° below 85 KIAS).
3. Airspeed -- 60-70 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
4. Elevator and Rudder Trim -- ADJUST.
5. Touchdown -- MAIN WHEELS FIRST.
6. Landing Roll -- LOWER NOSE WHEEL GENTLY.
7. Braking -- MINIMUM REQUIRED.

SHORT FIELD LANDING

1. Airspeed -- 65-75 KIAS (flaps UP).
2. Wing Flaps -- FULL DOWN (below 85 KIAS).
3. Airspeed -- MAINTAIN 60 KIAS.
4. Elevator and Rudder Trim -- ADJUST.
5. Power -- REDUCE TO IDLE as obstacle is cleared.
6. Touchdown -- MAIN WHEELS FIRST.
7. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.
8. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT for maximum brake effectiveness.

BALKED LANDING

1. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM.
2. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT to 20°.
3. Airspeed -- 55 KIAS.
4. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT slowly after reaching 65 KIAS.
5. Cowl Flap -- OPEN.

AFTER LANDING

1. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT.
2. Cowl Flap -- OPEN.

SECURING AIRPLANE

1. Parking Brake -- SET.
2. Avionics Power Switch, Autopilot (if installed), Electrical Equipment -- OFF.
3. Throttle -- IDLE.

4. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF (pull full out).
5. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
6. Master Switch -- OFF.
7. Control Lock -- INSTALL.
8. Fuel Selector Valve -- RIGHT.

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

STARTING ENGINE

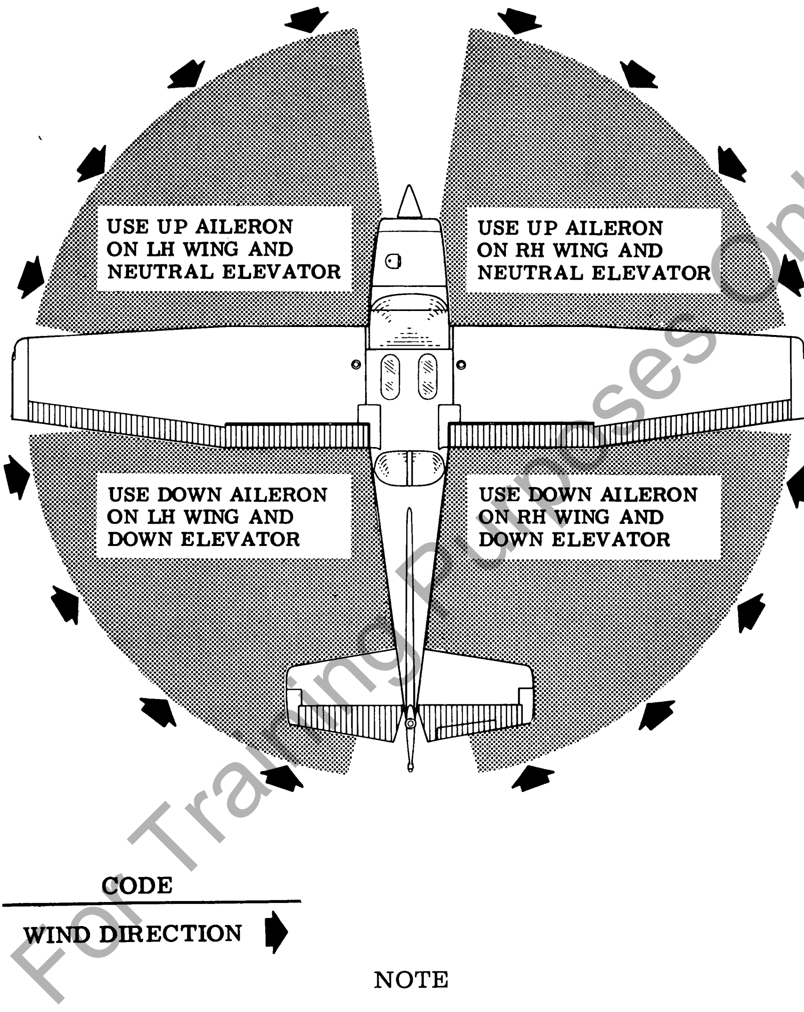
Proper fuel management and throttle adjustments are the determining factors in securing an easy start from your continuous-flow fuel-injection engine. The procedure outlined in this section should be followed closely as it is effective under nearly all operating conditions.

Conventional full rich mixture and high RPM propeller settings are used for starting; the throttle, however, should be fully closed initially. When ready to start, place the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position and advance the throttle to obtain 8-10 gal/hr fuel flow. Then close the throttle and turn off the auxiliary fuel pump. Place the ignition switch in the START position. While cranking, slowly advance the throttle until the engine starts. Slow throttle advancement is essential since the engine will start readily when the correct fuel/air ratio is obtained. When the engine has started, reset the throttle to the desired idle speed (800-1000 RPM).

The continuous-flow fuel injection system will inject atomized fuel in the intake ports as soon as the throttle and mixture controls are opened and the auxiliary fuel pump is turned on. If the auxiliary pump is turned on accidentally while the engine is stopped, with the throttle open and the mixture rich, solid fuel will collect temporarily in the cylinder intake ports, the quantity depending on the amount of the throttle opening and the length of time the pump has been operating. If this happens, it is advisable to wait a few minutes until this fuel drains away before starting the engine. To avoid flooding, turn the auxiliary fuel pump switch off promptly when the fuel flow reaches 10 gal/hr during preparation for engine start.

Engine mis-starts characterized by weak, intermittent firing followed by puffs of black smoke from the exhaust are caused by overpriming or flooding. This situation is more apt to develop in hot weather, or when the engine is hot. If it occurs, repeat the starting routine with the throttle approximately 1/2 open, the mixture in idle cut-off and the auxiliary fuel pump switch off. As the engine fires, move the mixture control to full rich and decrease the throttle to idle.

Engine mis-starts characterized by sufficient power to take the engine away from the starter but dying in 3 to 5 revolutions are the result of an excessively lean mixture after the start and can occur in warm or cold temperatures. Repeat the starting procedure but allow additional priming time with the auxiliary fuel pump switch on HIGH before cranking is started. If extremely hot temperatures have caused vapor which prevents a



NOTE

Strong quartering tail winds require caution. Avoid sudden bursts of the throttle and sharp braking when the airplane is in this attitude. Use the steerable nose wheel and rudder to maintain direction.

Figure 4-2. Taxiing Diagram

start, it will be necessary to hold the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position for 5 to 10 seconds or more to flush the vapor through the fuel lines until the fuel flow reaches 10 gal/hr. Then turn off the pump and proceed with normal starting procedures.

If prolonged cranking is necessary, allow the starter motor to cool at frequent intervals, since excessive heat may damage the armature.

After starting, if the oil pressure gage does not begin to show pressure within 30 seconds in normal temperatures and 60 seconds in very cold weather, shut off the engine and investigate. Lack of oil pressure can cause serious engine damage.

NOTE

Additional details concerning cold weather starting and operation may be found under Cold Weather Operation paragraphs in this section.

TAXIING

When taxiing, it is important that speed and use of brakes be held to a minimum and that all controls be utilized (see Taxiing Diagram, figure 4-2) to maintain directional control and balance. Taxiing over loose gravel or cinders should be done at low engine speed to avoid abrasion and stone damage to the propeller tips.

BEFORE TAKEOFF

WARM-UP

Since the engine is closely cowled for efficient in-flight cooling, precautions should be taken to avoid overheating on the ground. Full throttle checks on the ground are not recommended unless the pilot has good reason to suspect that the engine is not turning up properly.

MAGNETO CHECK

The magneto check should be made at 1800 RPM as follows. Move ignition switch first to R position and note RPM. Next move switch back to BOTH to clear the other set of plugs. Then move switch to L position, note RPM and return the switch to the BOTH position. RPM drop should not exceed 150 RPM on either magneto or show greater than 50 RPM differential between magnetos. If there is a doubt concerning operation of the ignition system, RPM checks at higher engine speeds will usually confirm whether a deficiency exists.

An absence of RPM drop may be an indication of faulty grounding of one side of the ignition system or should be cause for suspicion that the magneto timing is set in advance of the setting specified.

ALTERNATOR CHECK

Prior to flight where verification of proper alternator and alternator control unit operation is essential (such as night or instrument flights), a positive verification can be made by loading the electrical system momentarily (3 to 5 seconds) with the landing light, during the engine runup (1800 RPM). The ammeter will remain within a needle width of the initial reading if the alternator and alternator control unit are operating properly.

TAKEOFF

POWER CHECK

It is important to check full-throttle engine operation early in the takeoff run. Any sign of rough engine operation or sluggish engine acceleration is good cause for discontinuing the takeoff.

Full throttle runups over loose gravel are especially harmful to propeller tips. When takeoffs must be made over a gravel surface, it is very important that the throttle be advanced slowly. This allows the airplane to start rolling before takeoff RPM is developed, and the gravel will be blown back of the propeller rather than pulled into it. When unavoidable small dents appear in the propeller blades, they should be corrected immediately as described in Section 8 under Propeller Care.

For maximum engine power, the mixture should be adjusted during the initial takeoff roll to the fuel flow corresponding to the field elevation. (Refer to the fuel flow placard located adjacent to the fuel flow indicator). The power increase is significant above 3000 feet and this procedure should always be employed for field elevations greater than 5000 feet above sea level.

After full throttle is applied, adjust the throttle friction lock clockwise to prevent the throttle from creeping back from a maximum power position. Similar friction lock adjustment should be made as required in other flight conditions to maintain a fixed throttle setting.

WING FLAP SETTINGS

Normal takeoffs are accomplished with wing flaps 0°- 10°. Using 10° wing flaps reduces the ground run and total distance over an obstacle by approximately 5 percent.

If 10° wing flaps are used for takeoff, they should be left down until all obstacles are cleared and a safe flap retraction speed of 70 KIAS is reached. To clear an obstacle with wing flaps 10°, an obstacle clearance speed of 58 KIAS should be used.

Soft field takeoffs can be performed with 15° flaps by lifting the airplane off the ground as soon as practical in a slightly tail-low attitude. If no obstacles are ahead, the airplane should be leveled off immediately to accelerate to a safer climb speed. When departing a soft field with an aft C.G. loading, the elevator trim should be adjusted towards the nose down direction to give comfortable control wheel forces during the initial climb. Flap deflections greater than 15° are not approved for takeoff.

With wing flaps retracted and no obstructions ahead, a takeoff climb-out speed of 75-85 KIAS would be most efficient.

CROSSWIND TAKEOFF

Takeoffs into strong crosswinds normally are performed with the minimum flap setting necessary for the field length, to minimize the drift angle immediately after takeoff. With the ailerons partially deflected into the wind, the airplane is accelerated to a speed slightly higher than normal, then pulled off abruptly to prevent possible settling back to the runway while drifting. When clear of the ground, make a coordinated turn into the wind to correct for drift.

ENROUTE CLIMB

Normal climbs are performed at 85-95 KIAS with flaps up and maximum power for the best combination of engine cooling, rate of climb and forward visibility. The mixture should be leaned in accordance with the fuel flow placard.

If it is necessary to climb rapidly to clear mountains or reach favorable winds or better weather at high altitudes, the best rate-of-climb speed should be used. This speed is 78 KIAS at sea level, decreasing to 73 KIAS at 10,000 feet. Maximum power should be used and the mixture should be leaned according to the fuel flow placard.

If an obstruction ahead requires a steep climb angle, a best angle-of-climb speed should be used with flaps up and maximum power. This speed is 57 KIAS at sea level, increasing to 63 KIAS at 10,000 feet.

CRUISE

Normal cruising is performed between 60% and 80% power. The engine RPM and corresponding fuel consumption for various altitudes can be determined by using your Cessna Power Computer or the data in Section 5.

NOTE

Cruising should be done at 80% power until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized. This is to ensure proper seating of the rings and is applicable to new engines, and engines in service following cylinder replacement or top overhaul of one or more cylinders.

The Cruise Performance Table, figure 4-3, illustrates the advantage of higher altitude on both true airspeed and nautical miles per gallon. In addition, the beneficial effect of lower cruise power on nautical miles per gallon at a given altitude can be observed. This table should be used as a guide, along with the available winds aloft information, to determine the most favorable altitude and power setting for a given trip. The selection of cruise altitude on the basis of the most favorable wind conditions and the use of low power settings are significant factors that should be considered on every trip to reduce fuel consumption.

For reduced noise levels, it is desirable to select the lowest RPM in the

	80% POWER		70% POWER		60% POWER	
ALTITUDE	KTAS	NMPG	KTAS	NMPG	KTAS	NMPG
3000 Feet	126	11.2	119	12.0	110	12.9
6000 Feet	130	11.5	122	12.3	112	13.1
9000 Feet	---	---	125	12.6	114	13.3
Standard Conditions						Zero Wind

Figure 4-3. Cruise Performance Table

green arc range for a given percent power that will provide smooth engine operation. The cowl flap should be opened, if necessary, to maintain the cylinder head temperature at approximately two-thirds of the normal operating range (green arc).

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, the engine may be operated at one gallon per hour leaner than shown in this handbook and on the power computer. This will result in approximately 8% greater range than shown in this handbook accompanied by approximately a 4 knot decrease in speed.

The fuel injection system employed on this engine is considered to be non-icing. In the event that unusual conditions cause the intake air filter to become clogged or iced over, an alternate intake air valve opens automatically for the most efficient use of either normal or alternate air depending on the amount of filter blockage.

LEANING WITH A CESSNA ECONOMY MIXTURE INDICATOR (EGT)

Exhaust gas temperature (EGT) as shown on the optional Cessna Economy Mixture Indicator may be used as an aid for mixture leaning in cruising flight at 80% power or less. To adjust the mixture, using this indicator, lean to establish the peak EGT as a reference point and then enrichen the mixture by a desired increment based on figure 4-4.

Continuous operation at peak EGT is authorized only at 70° power or less. This best economy mixture setting results in approximately 8% greater range than shown in this handbook accompanied by approximately a 4 knot decrease in speed.

NOTE

Operation on the lean side of peak EGT is not approved.

MIXTURE DESCRIPTION	EXHAUST GAS TEMPERATURE
RECOMMENDED LEAN (Pilot's Operating Handbook and Power Computer)	50°F Rich of Peak EGT
BEST ECONOMY (70% Power or Less)	Peak EGT

Figure 4-4. EGT Table

When leaning the mixture, if a distinct peak is not obtained, use the corresponding maximum EGT as a reference point for enrichening the mixture to the desired cruise setting. Any change in altitude or power will require a recheck of the EGT indication.

STALLS

The stall characteristics are conventional and aural warning is provided by a stall warning horn which sounds between 5 and 10 knots above the stall in all configurations.

Power off stall speeds at maximum weight for both forward and aft C.G. are presented in Section 5.

SPINS

Intentional spins are approved in this airplane within certain restricted loadings. Spins with baggage loadings or occupied rear seat(s) are not approved.

However, before attempting to perform spins several items should be carefully considered to assure a safe flight. No spins should be attempted without first having received dual instruction both in spin entries and spin recoveries from a qualified instructor who is familiar with the spin characteristics of the Cessna R172K.

The cabin should be clean and all loose equipment (including the microphone and rear seat belts) should be stowed or secured. For a solo flight in which spins will be conducted, the copilot's seat belt and shoulder harness should also be secured. The seat belts and shoulder harnesses should be adjusted to provide proper restraint during all anticipated flight conditions. However, care should be taken to ensure that the pilot can easily reach the flight controls and produce maximum control travels.

It is recommended that, where feasible, entries be accomplished at high enough altitude that recoveries are completed 4000 feet or more above ground level. At least 1000 feet of altitude loss should be allowed for a 1-turn spin and recovery, while a 6-turn spin and recovery may require somewhat more than twice that amount. For example, the recommended entry altitude for a 6-turn spin would be 6000 feet above ground level. In any case, entries should be planned so that recoveries are completed **well above** the minimum 1500 feet above ground level required by FAR 91.71. Another reason for using high altitudes for practicing spins is that a greater field of view is provided which will assist in maintaining pilot orientation.

The normal entry is made from a power-off stall. As the stall is approached, the elevator control should be smoothly pulled to the full aft position. Just prior to reaching the stall "break", rudder control in the desired direction of the spin rotation should be applied so that full rudder deflection is reached almost simultaneously with reaching full aft elevator. A slightly greater rate of deceleration than for normal stall entries, application of ailerons in the direction of the desired spin, and the use of power at the entry will assure more consistent and positive entries to the spin. As the airplane begins to spin, reduce the power to idle and return the ailerons to neutral. Both elevator and rudder controls should be held full with the spin until the spin recovery is initiated. An inadvertent relaxation of either of these controls could result in the development of a nose-down spiral.

For the purpose of training in spins and spin recoveries, a 1 or 2-turn spin is adequate and should be used. Up to 2 turns, the spin will progress to a fairly rapid rate of rotation and a steep attitude. Application of recovery controls will produce prompt recoveries (within 1/4 turn). During extended spins of two to three turns or more, the spin will tend to change into a spiral, particularly to the right. This will be accompanied by an increase in airspeed and gravity loads on the airplane. If this occurs, recovery should be accomplished quickly by leveling the wings and recovering from the resulting dive.

Regardless of how many turns the spin is held or how it is entered, the following recovery technique should be used:

1. VERIFY THAT THROTTLE IS IN IDLE POSITION AND AILERONS ARE NEUTRAL.
2. APPLY AND **HOLD** FULL RUDDER OPPOSITE TO THE DIRECTION OF ROTATION.
3. JUST **AFTER** THE RUDDER REACHES THE STOP, MOVE THE CONTROL WHEEL **BRISKLY** FORWARD FAR ENOUGH TO BREAK THE STALL.
4. **HOLD** THESE CONTROL INPUTS UNTIL ROTATION STOPS.
5. AS ROTATION STOPS, NEUTRALIZE RUDDER, AND MAKE A SMOOTH RECOVERY FROM THE RESULTING DIVE.

NOTE

If disorientation precludes a visual determination of the direction of rotation, the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator may be referred to for this information.

Variation in basic airplane rigging or in weight and balance due to installed equipment or right seat occupancy can cause differences in behavior, particularly in extended spins. These differences are normal and will result in variations in the spin characteristics and in the spiraling tendencies for spins of more than 2 turns. However, the aforementioned recovery technique should always be used and will result in the most expeditious recovery from any spin.

Intentional spins with flaps extended are prohibited, since the high speeds which may occur during recovery are potentially damaging to the flap/wing structure.

LANDING

NORMAL LANDING

Normal landing approaches can be made with power-on or power-off at speeds of 65-75 KIAS with flaps up, and 60-70 KIAS with flaps down. Surface winds and air turbulence are usually the primary factors in determining the most comfortable approach speeds. Steep slips should be avoided with flap settings greater than 20° due to a slight tendency for the elevator to oscillate under certain combinations of airspeed, sideslip angle, and center of gravity loadings.

Actual touchdown should be made with power-off and on the main wheels first to reduce the landing speed and subsequent need for braking in the landing roll. The nose wheel is lowered to the runway gently after the speed has diminished to avoid unnecessary nose gear loads. This procedure is especially important in rough or soft field landings.

SHORT FIELD LANDING

For a short field landing in smooth air conditions, make an approach at 60 KIAS with full flaps using enough power to control the glide path. (Slightly higher approach speeds should be used under turbulent air conditions.) After all approach obstacles are cleared, progressively reduce power and maintain the approach speed by lowering the nose of the airplane. Touchdown should be made with power-off and on the main wheels first. Immediately after touchdown, lower the nose wheel and apply heavy braking as required. For maximum brake effectiveness, retract the flaps, hold the control wheel full back, and apply maximum brake pressure without sliding the tires.

CROSSWIND LANDING

When landing in a strong crosswind, use the minimum flap setting required for the field length. If flap settings greater than 20° are used in sideslips with full rudder deflection, some elevator oscillation may be felt at normal approach speeds. However, this does not affect control of the airplane. Although the crab or combination method of drift correction may be used, the wing-low method gives the best control. After touchdown, hold a straight course with the steerable nose wheel and occasional braking if necessary.

BALKED LANDING

In a balked landing (go-around) climb, reduce the wing flap setting to 20° immediately after full power is applied and maintain 55 KIAS until immediate obstacles are cleared. Then slowly retract the wing flaps after accelerating to an airspeed of 65 KIAS. If obstacles must be cleared during the go-around climb, leave the wing flaps in the 10° to 20° range and maintain 55 KIAS until the obstacles are cleared. Lean the mixture according to the fuel flow placard. After clearing any obstacles, the flaps may be retracted as the airplane accelerates to the normal flaps-up climb speed of 85-95 KIAS.

COLD WEATHER OPERATION

STARTING

Prior to starting on a cold morning, it is advisable to pull the propeller through several times by hand to "break loose" or "limber" the oil, thus conserving battery energy.

NOTE

> When pulling the propeller through by hand, treat it as if the ignition switch is turned on. A loose or broken ground wire on either magneto could cause the engine to fire.

Starting can be expedited by switching the auxiliary fuel pump to HIGH position and advancing the throttle for a fuel flow of 8-10 gal./hr. for 3 to 6 seconds.

In extremely cold (-18°C and lower) weather, the use of an external preheater and an external power source are recommended whenever possible to obtain positive starting and to reduce wear and abuse to the engine and electrical system. Pre-heat will thaw the oil trapped in the oil cooler, which probably will be congealed prior to starting in extremely cold temperatures. When using an external power source, the position of the master switch is important. Refer to Section 9, Supplements, for Ground Service Plug Receptacle operating details.

For quick, smooth engine starts in very cold temperatures, use six strokes of the manual primer before cranking, with an additional one or two strokes as the engine starts.

WARM-UP

In very cold weather, no oil temperature indication need be apparent before takeoff. After a suitable warm-up period (2 to 5 minutes at 1000 RPM), with cylinder head temperatures at bottom of green arc, the engine is ready for takeoff if it accelerates smoothly and the oil pressure is normal and steady.

INFLIGHT

During let-down, observe engine temperatures closely and carry sufficient power to maintain them in the recommended operating range.

HOT WEATHER OPERATION

Refer to the general warm temperature starting information under Starting Engine in this section. Avoid prolonged engine operation on the ground.

NOISE ABATEMENT

Increased emphasis on improving the quality of our environment requires renewed effort on the part of all pilots to minimize the effect of airplane noise on the public.

We, as pilots, can demonstrate our concern for environmental improvement, by application of the following suggested procedures, and thereby tend to build public support for aviation:

1. Pilots operating aircraft under VFR over outdoor assemblies of persons, recreational and park areas, and other noise-sensitive areas should make every effort to fly not less than 2000 feet above the surface, weather permitting, even though flight at a lower level may be consistent with the provisions of government regulations.
2. During departure from or approach to an airport, climb after takeoff and descent for landing should be made so as to avoid prolonged flight at low altitude near noise-sensitive areas.

NOTE

The above recommended procedures do not apply where they would conflict with Air Traffic Control clearances or instructions, or where, in the pilot's judgment, an altitude of less than 2000 feet is necessary for him to adequately exercise his duty to see and avoid other aircraft.

The certificated noise level for the Model R172K at 2550 pounds maximum weight is 74.1 dB(A). No determination has been made by the Federal Aviation Administration that the noise levels of this airplane are or should be acceptable or unacceptable for operation at, into, or out of, any airport.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Performance data charts on the following pages are presented so that you may know what to expect from the airplane under various conditions, and also, to facilitate the planning of flights in detail and with reasonable accuracy. The data in the charts has been computed from actual flight tests with the airplane and engine in good condition and using average piloting techniques.

It should be noted that the performance information presented in the range and endurance profile charts allows for 45 minutes reserve fuel at the specified cruise power. Fuel flow data for cruise is based on the recommended lean mixture setting. Some indeterminate variables such as mixture leaning technique, fuel metering characteristics, engine and propeller condition, and air turbulence may account for variations of 10% or more in range and endurance. Therefore, it is important to utilize all available information to estimate the fuel required for the particular flight.

USE OF PERFORMANCE CHARTS

Performance data is presented in tabular or graphical form to illustrate the effect of different variables. Sufficiently detailed information is provided in the tables so that conservative values can be selected and used to determine the particular performance figure with reasonable accuracy.

SAMPLE PROBLEM

The following sample flight problem utilizes information from the various charts to determine the predicted performance data for a typical flight. The following information is known:

AIRPLANE CONFIGURATION	
Takeoff weight	2500 Pounds
Usable fuel	49 Gallons
TAKEOFF CONDITIONS	
Field pressure altitude	1500 Feet
Temperature	28°C (16°C above standard)
Wind component along runway	12 Knot Headwind
Field length	3500 Feet

CRUISE CONDITIONS

Total distance	365 Nautical Miles
Pressure altitude	5500 Feet
Temperature	20°C (16°C above standard)
Expected wind enroute	10 Knot Headwind

LANDING CONDITIONS

Field pressure altitude	2000 Feet
Temperature	25°C
Field length	3000 Feet

TAKEOFF

The takeoff distance chart, figure 5-4, should be consulted, keeping in mind that the distances shown are based on the short field technique. Conservative distances can be established by reading the chart at the next higher value of weight, altitude and temperature. For example, in this particular sample problem, the takeoff distance information presented for a weight of 2550 pounds, pressure altitude of 2000 feet and a temperature of 30°C should be used and results in the following:

Ground roll	1070 Feet
Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle	1820 Feet

These distances are well within the available takeoff field length. However, a correction for the effect of wind may be made based on Note 2 of the takeoff chart. The correction for a 12 knot headwind is:

$$\frac{12 \text{ Knots}}{9 \text{ Knots}} \times 10\% = 13\% \text{ Decrease}$$

This results in the following distances, corrected for wind:

Ground roll, zero wind	1070
Decrease in ground roll (1070 feet × 13%)	139
Corrected ground roll	931 Feet
Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle, zero wind	1820
Decrease in total distance (1820 feet × 13%)	237
Corrected total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle	1583 Feet

CRUISE

The cruising altitude should be selected based on a consideration of trip length, winds aloft, and the airplane's performance. A cruising altitude and the expected wind enroute have been given for this sample problem. However, the power setting selection for cruise must be determined based on several considerations. These include the cruise performance characteristics presented in figure 5-7, the range profile chart presented in figure 5-8, and the endurance profile chart presented in figure 5-9.

The relationship between power and range is illustrated by the range profile chart. Considerable fuel savings and longer range result when lower power settings are used. For this sample problem, a cruise power of approximately 70% will be used.

The cruise performance chart for 6000 feet pressure altitude is entered using 20°C above standard temperature. These values most nearly correspond to the planned altitude and expected temperature conditions. The power setting chosen is 2500 RPM and 22 inches of manifold pressure, which results in the following:

Power	70%
True airspeed	124 Knots
Cruise fuel flow	9.9 GPH

The power computer may be used to determine power and fuel consumption more accurately during the flight.

FUEL REQUIRED

The total fuel requirement for the flight may be estimated using the performance information in figures 5-6 and 5-7. For this sample problem, figure 5-6 shows that a normal climb from 2000 feet to 6000 feet requires 1.5 gallons of fuel. The corresponding distance during the climb is 10 nautical miles. These values are for a standard temperature and are sufficiently accurate for most flight planning purposes. However, a further correction for the effect of temperature may be made as noted on the climb chart. The approximate effect of a non-standard temperature is to increase the time, fuel, and distance by 10% for each 10°C above standard temperature, due to the lower rate of climb. In this case, assuming a temperature 16°C above standard, the correction would be:

$$\frac{16°C}{10°C} \times 10\% = 16\% \text{ Increase}$$

With this factor included, the fuel estimate would be calculated as follows:

Fuel to climb, standard temperature	1.5
Increase due to non-standard temperature (1.5 × 16%)	0.2
Corrected fuel to climb	1.7 Gallons

Using a similar procedure for the distance during climb results in 12 nautical miles.

The resultant cruise distance is:

Total distance	365
Climb distance	-12
Cruise distance	353 Nautical Miles

With an expected 10 knot headwind, the ground speed for cruise is predicted to be:

$$\begin{array}{l} 124 \\ \underline{-10} \\ 114 \text{ Knots} \end{array}$$

Therefore, the time required for the cruise portion of the trip is:

$$\frac{353 \text{ Nautical Miles}}{114 \text{ Knots}} = 3.1 \text{ Hours}$$

The fuel required for cruise is:

3.1 hours × 9.9 gallons/hour = 30.7 Gallons

The total estimated fuel required is as follows:

Engine start, taxi, and takeoff	1.4
Climb	1.7
Cruise	30.7
Total fuel required	33.8 Gallons

Once the flight is underway, ground speed checks will provide a more accurate basis for estimating the time enroute and the corresponding fuel required to complete the trip with ample reserve.

LANDING

A procedure similar to takeoff should be used for estimating the landing distance at the destination airport. Figure 5-10 presents landing distance information for the short field technique. The distances corresponding to 2000 feet pressure altitude and a temperature of 30°C are as follows:

Ground roll	700 Feet
Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle	1390 Feet

A correction for the effect of wind may be made, based on Note 2 of the landing chart using the same procedure as outlined for takeoff.

DEMONSTRATED OPERATING TEMPERATURE

Satisfactory engine cooling has been demonstrated for this airplane with an outside air temperature 23°C above standard. This is not to be considered as an operating limitation. Reference should be made to Section 2 for engine operating limitations.

AIRSPEED CALIBRATION

NORMAL STATIC SOURCE

FLAPS UP												
KIAS	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
KCAS	54	62	71	80	89	98	107	117	127	137	147	157
FLAPS 10°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	---	---	---	---
KCAS	49	55	63	72	81	90	99	108	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 40°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---	---
KCAS	48	55	63	72	81	86	---	---	---	---	---	---

Figure 5-1. Airspeed Calibration (Sheet 1 of 2)

AIRSPEED CALIBRATION

ALTERNATE STATIC SOURCE

HEATER/VENTS AND WINDOWS CLOSED

FLAPS UP												
NORMAL KIAS	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
ALTERNATE KIAS	43	57	69	79	90	100	109	119	128	137	147	156
FLAPS 10°												
NORMAL KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	---	---	---	---
ALTERNATE KIAS	32	43	56	68	78	89	98	108	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 40°												
NORMAL KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---	---
ALTERNATE KIAS	31	42	54	64	75	81	---	---	---	---	---	---

HEATER/VENTS OPEN AND WINDOWS CLOSED

FLAPS UP												
NORMAL KIAS	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
ALTERNATE KIAS	42	56	67	77	87	96	106	115	125	134	144	153
FLAPS 10°												
NORMAL KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	---	---	---	---
ALTERNATE KIAS	30	41	55	66	76	85	95	105	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 40°												
NORMAL KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---	---
ALTERNATE KIAS	25	37	49	61	72	76	---	---	---	---	---	---

Figure 5-1. Airspeed Calibration (Sheet 2 of 2)

TEMPERATURE CONVERSION CHART

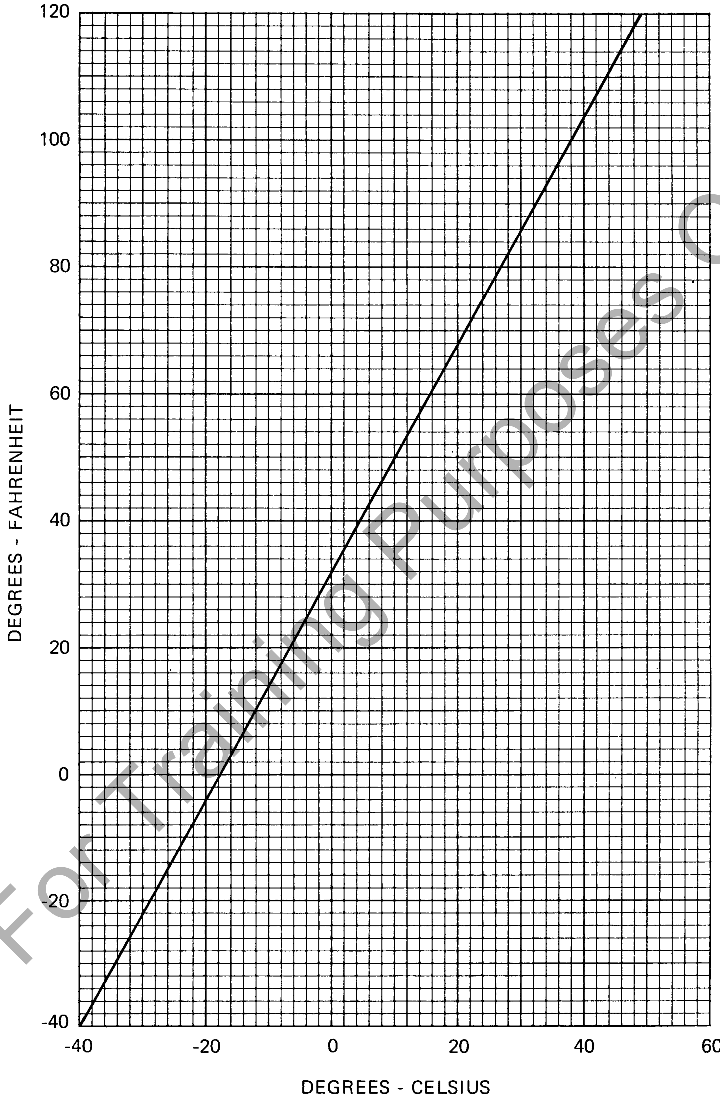


Figure 5-2. Temperature Conversion Chart

STALL SPEEDS

CONDITIONS:
Power Off

NOTES:
1. Maximum altitude loss during a stall recovery may be as much as 160 feet.
2. KIAS values are approximate.

MOST REARWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

WEIGHT LBS	FLAP DEFLECTION	ANGLE OF BANK							
		0°		30°		45°		60°	
		KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
2550	UP	45	53	48	57	54	63	64	75
	10°	42	50	45	54	50	59	59	71
	40°	36	46	39	49	43	55	51	65

MOST FORWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

WEIGHT LBS	FLAP DEFLECTION	ANGLE OF BANK							
		0°		30°		45°		60°	
		KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
2550	UP	49	56	53	60	58	67	69	79
	10°	43	51	46	55	51	61	61	72
	40°	38	48	41	52	45	57	54	68

Figure 5-3. Stall Speeds

TAKEOFF DISTANCE
MAXIMUM WEIGHT 2550 LBS
SHORT FIELD

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 10°
2600 RPM, Full Throttle and Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow Prior to Brake Release
Cowl Flap Open
Paved, Level, Dry Runway
Zero Wind

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
2000	15
4000	14
6000	13
8000	12

NOTES:
1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tail winds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
3. For operation on a dry, grass runway, increase distances by 15% of the "ground roll" figure.

WEIGHT LBS	TAKEOFF SPEED KIAS		PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	LIFT OFF	AT 50 FT		GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2550	54	58	S.L.	715	1225	770	1315	830	1410	895	1510	960	1625
			1000	780	1335	840	1435	905	1540	975	1655	1050	1780
			2000	855	1460	920	1570	995	1690	1070	1820	1150	1960
			3000	935	1600	1010	1725	1090	1860	1175	2005	1265	2165
			4000	1025	1760	1110	1900	1195	2055	1290	2220	1390	2405
			5000	1125	1945	1220	2105	1315	2280	1420	2470	1530	2685
			6000	1240	2155	1340	2340	1450	2540	1565	2765	1690	3015
			7000	1365	2405	1480	2615	1600	2850	1730	3115	1870	3415
			8000	1510	2695	1635	2945	1770	3225	1915	3545	2075	3920

Figure 5-4. Takeoff Distance (Sheet 1 of 2)

TAKEOFF DISTANCE
2400 LBS AND 2200 LBS

SHORT FIELD

REFER TO SHEET 1 FOR APPROPRIATE CONDITIONS AND NOTES.

WEIGHT LBS	TAKEOFF SPEED KIAS		PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	LIFT OFF	AT 50 FT		GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2400	52	56	S.L.	620	1070	670	1145	720	1225	775	1315	835	1410
			1000	680	1165	730	1250	790	1340	845	1435	910	1540
			2000	740	1270	800	1365	860	1465	925	1575	995	1690
			3000	810	1390	875	1495	945	1605	1015	1730	1095	1860
			4000	890	1520	960	1640	1035	1765	1115	1905	1200	2055
			5000	975	1675	1055	1805	1135	1950	1225	2110	1320	2280
			6000	1070	1850	1160	2000	1250	2165	1350	2345	1455	2540
			7000	1180	2050	1275	2220	1380	2410	1490	2620	1610	2850
			8000	1305	2280	1410	2480	1525	2700	1650	2950	1780	3225
2200	50	54	S.L.	510	880	550	940	590	1005	635	1075	680	1150
			1000	555	955	600	1025	645	1095	690	1175	740	1255
			2000	605	1040	655	1115	705	1195	755	1280	810	1370
			3000	660	1135	715	1215	770	1305	825	1400	890	1500
			4000	725	1240	780	1330	840	1430	905	1535	975	1650
			5000	795	1355	855	1460	925	1570	995	1690	1070	1820
			6000	870	1490	940	1605	1015	1730	1095	1865	1175	2010
			7000	955	1645	1035	1770	1115	1915	1205	2065	1295	2235
			8000	1055	1815	1140	1965	1230	2125	1330	2300	1430	2495

Figure 5-4. Takeoff Distance (Sheet 2 of 2)

MAXIMUM RATE OF CLIMB

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12
12,000	10

WEIGHT LBS	PRESS ALT FT	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB - FPM			
			-20°C	0°C	20°C	40°C
2550	S.L.	78	1040	945	845	750
	2000	77	925	830	740	650
	4000	76	810	720	635	545
	6000	75	695	615	530	445
	8000	74	585	505	425	345
	10,000	73	480	400	320	- - -
	12,000	72	370	295	220	- - -

Figure 5-5. Maximum Rate of Climb

TIME, FUEL, AND DISTANCE TO CLIMB

MAXIMUM RATE OF CLIMB

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open
Standard Temperature

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12
12,000	10

NOTES:
1. Add 1.4 gallons of fuel for engine start, taxi and takeoff allowance.
2. Increase time, fuel and distance by 10% for each 10°C above standard temperature.
3. Distances shown are based on zero wind.

WEIGHT LBS	PRESSURE ALTITUDE FT	TEMP °C	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB FPM	FROM SEA LEVEL		
					TIME MIN	FUEL USED GALLONS	DISTANCE NM
2550	S.L.	15	78	870	0	0	0
	1000	13	78	825	1	0.3	2
	2000	11	77	780	2	0.6	3
	3000	9	77	735	4	1.0	5
	4000	7	76	690	5	1.3	7
	5000	5	76	645	7	1.6	9
	6000	3	75	600	8	2.0	11
	7000	1	75	555	10	2.4	14
	8000	-1	74	510	12	2.7	16
	9000	-3	74	465	14	3.2	19
	10,000	-5	73	420	16	3.6	23
	11,000	-7	73	375	19	4.0	26
	12,000	-9	72	330	22	4.5	31

Figure 5-6. Time, Fuel, and Distance to Climb (Sheet 1 of 2)

TIME, FUEL, AND DISTANCE TO CLIMB

NORMAL CLIMB - 90 KIAS

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open
Standard Temperature

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12

NOTES:
1. Add 1.4 gallons of fuel for engine start, taxi and takeoff allowance.
2. Increase time, fuel and distance by 10% for each 10°C above standard temperature.
3. Distances shown are based on zero wind.

WEIGHT LBS	PRESSURE ALTITUDE FT	TEMP °C	RATE OF CLIMB FPM	FROM SEA LEVEL		
				TIME MIN	FUEL USED GALLONS	DISTANCE NM
2550	S.L.	15	845	0	0	0
	1000	13	790	1	0.3	2
	2000	11	740	3	0.7	4
	3000	9	685	4	1.0	6
	4000	7	630	6	1.4	8
	5000	5	575	7	1.8	11
	6000	3	525	9	2.2	14
	7000	1	470	11	2.6	18
	8000	-1	415	13	3.1	21

Figure 5-6. Time, Fuel, and Distance to Climb (Sheet 2 of 2)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE
PRESSURE ALTITUDE 2000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE
For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -9°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE 11°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 31°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	24	---	---	---	81	126	11.4	78	127	11.0
	23	78	122	11.1	76	122	10.7	73	123	10.3
	22	73	118	10.3	71	119	10.0	68	119	9.6
	21	68	114	9.6	65	114	9.3	63	114	9.0
2500	25	---	---	---	81	126	11.5	79	127	11.1
	24	80	122	11.2	77	123	10.8	74	124	10.5
	23	75	119	10.6	72	120	10.2	70	120	9.9
	22	70	116	9.9	67	116	9.5	65	116	9.2
2400	25	79	122	11.2	76	123	10.8	74	123	10.4
	24	74	119	10.5	72	120	10.2	69	120	9.8
	23	70	116	9.9	67	116	9.5	65	116	9.2
	22	65	112	9.2	63	112	8.9	61	112	8.6
2300	25	74	119	10.5	72	119	10.1	69	120	9.8
	24	70	116	9.9	67	116	9.5	65	116	9.2
	23	65	112	9.2	63	112	8.9	61	112	8.7
	22	61	108	8.6	59	108	8.4	57	107	8.1
2200	25	69	115	9.8	67	115	9.4	64	115	9.1
	24	65	112	9.2	63	112	8.9	61	111	8.6
	23	61	108	8.6	59	108	8.3	57	107	8.1
	22	57	104	8.1	55	103	7.8	53	102	7.6
	21	52	99	7.6	51	98	7.3	49	97	7.1
	20	48	94	7.0	47	93	6.8	45	91	6.6
	19	44	88	6.5	43	87	6.3	41	86	6.2

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 1 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE
PRESSURE ALTITUDE 4000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

> NOTE
>
> For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -13°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE 7°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 27°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	23	81	126	11.5	79	127	11.1	76	127	10.7
	22	76	122	10.8	73	123	10.4	71	123	10.0
	21	71	119	10.0	68	119	9.7	66	119	9.3
	20	66	114	9.3	63	114	9.0	61	113	8.7
2500	24	82	126	11.6	79	127	11.2	77	128	10.8
	23	77	123	11.0	75	124	10.6	72	124	10.2
	22	73	120	10.3	70	120	9.9	68	120	9.6
	21	68	116	9.6	65	116	9.3	63	116	9.0
2400	24	77	123	10.9	74	124	10.5	72	124	10.2
	23	72	120	10.2	70	120	9.9	68	120	9.5
	22	68	116	9.6	65	116	9.2	63	116	9.0
	21	63	112	8.9	61	111	8.6	59	110	8.4
2300	24	72	120	10.2	70	120	9.9	67	120	9.5
	23	68	116	9.6	65	116	9.3	63	116	9.0
	22	63	112	9.0	61	112	8.7	59	111	8.4
	21	59	108	8.4	57	107	8.1	55	106	7.9
2200	24	68	116	9.6	65	116	9.2	63	115	8.9
	23	63	112	9.0	61	112	8.7	59	111	8.4
	22	59	108	8.4	57	107	8.1	55	106	7.9
	21	55	103	7.9	53	102	7.6	51	101	7.4
	20	51	98	7.3	49	97	7.1	47	95	6.9
	19	46	92	6.8	45	91	6.6	43	89	6.4

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 2 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 6000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -17°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE 3°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 23°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	23	---	---	---	81	131	11.5	79	131	11.1
	22	79	126	11.2	76	127	10.8	74	127	10.4
	21	74	123	10.5	71	123	10.1	69	123	9.7
	20	69	119	9.7	66	118	9.3	64	118	9.1
2500	23	80	127	11.3	77	128	10.9	75	128	10.6
	22	76	124	10.7	73	124	10.3	70	124	9.9
	21	71	120	10.0	68	120	9.6	66	120	9.3
	20	66	116	9.3	63	116	9.0	61	115	8.7
2400	23	75	124	10.6	72	124	10.2	70	124	9.9
	22	70	120	9.9	68	120	9.6	65	120	9.3
	21	65	116	9.3	63	115	9.0	61	114	8.7
	20	61	111	8.6	59	110	8.4	57	109	8.1
2300	23	71	120	10.0	68	120	9.6	66	120	9.3
	22	66	116	9.3	64	116	9.0	61	115	8.7
	21	61	112	8.7	59	111	8.4	57	110	8.2
	20	57	107	8.1	55	105	7.9	53	105	7.6
2200	23	66	116	9.3	63	116	9.0	61	115	8.7
	22	62	112	8.7	59	111	8.4	57	110	8.2
	21	57	107	8.2	55	106	7.9	53	105	7.7
	20	53	102	7.6	51	101	7.4	49	99	7.2
	19	49	96	7.1	47	95	6.8	45	93	6.7
	18	44	90	6.6	43	89	6.4	41	87	6.2

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 3 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 8000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -21°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE -1°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 19°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	21	77	127	10.9	74	128	10.5	72	127	10.1
	20	72	123	10.1	69	123	9.8	67	122	9.4
	19	66	118	9.4	64	118	9.0	62	116	8.8
	18	61	113	8.6	59	111	8.3	57	110	8.1
2500	21	74	125	10.4	71	125	10.0	69	124	9.7
	20	69	120	9.7	66	120	9.4	64	119	9.1
	19	64	116	9.0	61	115	8.7	59	113	8.4
	18	59	110	8.4	56	109	8.1	54	108	7.8
2400	21	68	120	9.6	65	119	9.3	63	118	9.0
	20	63	115	9.0	61	114	8.6	59	113	8.4
	19	58	110	8.3	56	108	8.0	54	107	7.8
	18	54	104	7.7	52	103	7.5	50	101	7.2
2300	21	64	116	9.1	62	115	8.7	59	114	8.5
	20	59	111	8.5	57	109	8.2	55	109	7.9
	19	55	105	7.9	53	104	7.6	51	103	7.4
	18	50	100	7.3	48	98	7.0	47	96	6.8
2200	21	60	111	8.5	57	110	8.2	55	109	7.9
	20	55	106	7.9	53	105	7.7	51	103	7.4
	19	51	100	7.4	49	99	7.1	47	97	6.9
	18	47	94	6.8	45	93	6.6	43	91	6.4

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 4 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 10,000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -25°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE -5°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 15°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	19	69	123	9.8	67	122	9.4	64	121	9.1
	18	64	117	9.0	61	116	8.7	59	115	8.4
	17	58	110	8.3	56	109	8.0	54	108	7.8
	16	53	104	7.6	51	102	7.3	49	100	7.1
2500	19	67	120	9.4	64	119	9.1	62	118	8.8
	18	62	115	8.7	59	113	8.4	57	112	8.2
	17	56	108	8.0	54	107	7.8	52	105	7.5
	16	50	101	7.3	49	99	7.1	47	97	6.8
2400	19	61	114	8.6	59	112	8.3	56	111	8.1
	18	56	108	8.0	54	107	7.8	52	105	7.5
	17	51	102	7.4	49	100	7.2	48	99	7.0
	16	47	95	6.8	45	94	6.6	43	91	6.4
2300	19	57	109	8.2	55	108	7.9	53	107	7.7
	18	53	104	7.6	51	102	7.3	49	100	7.1
	17	48	97	7.0	46	95	6.8	45	94	6.6
2200	19	53	104	7.7	51	103	7.4	49	101	7.2
	18	49	98	7.1	47	97	6.9	45	95	6.7
	17	45	92	6.6	43	90	6.4	42	88	6.2

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 5 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 12,000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP -29°C			STANDARD TEMPERATURE -9°C			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP 11°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	18	67	122	9.4	64	121	9.1	62	120	8.8
	17	61	115	8.7	59	114	8.4	57	113	8.1
	16	55	108	7.9	53	107	7.7	51	105	7.4
	15	50	100	7.2	48	99	7.0	46	97	6.7
2500	18	64	119	9.1	62	118	8.8	60	117	8.5
	17	59	112	8.4	57	112	8.1	55	110	7.8
	16	53	106	7.7	51	104	7.4	49	102	7.2
	15	47	97	6.9	45	95	6.7	44	93	6.5
2400	18	58	112	8.3	56	111	8.0	54	109	7.8
	17	54	106	7.7	52	104	7.5	50	103	7.2
	16	49	100	7.1	47	98	6.9	46	96	6.7
	15	44	93	6.6	43	90	6.4	41	88	6.2
2300	18	55	108	7.9	53	106	7.6	51	104	7.4
	17	50	101	7.3	48	100	7.1	47	98	6.8
	16	46	95	6.7	44	93	6.5	43	90	6.3
2200	18	51	103	7.4	49	101	7.1	47	99	6.9
	17	47	96	6.8	45	94	6.6	44	92	6.4

Figure 5-7. Cruise Performance (Sheet 6 of 6)

RANGE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
49 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature
Zero Wind

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the distance during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

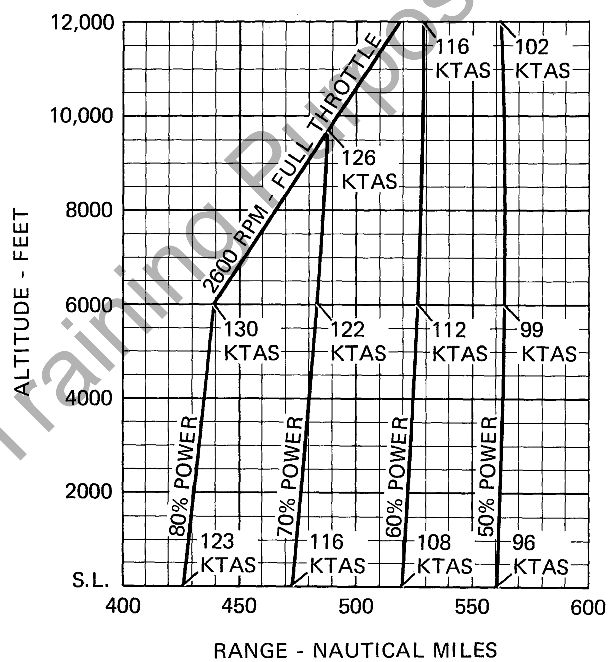


Figure 5-8. Range Profile (Sheet 1 of 2)

RANGE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
66 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature
Zero Wind

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the distance during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

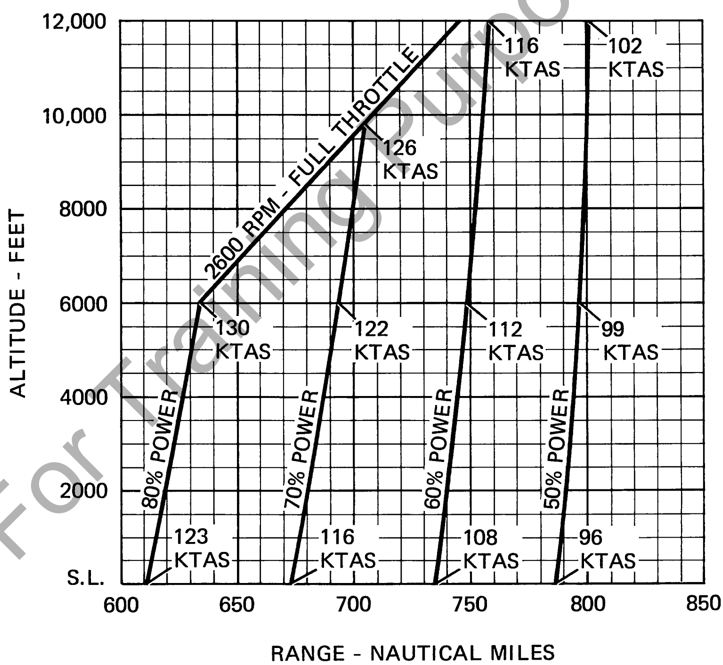


Figure 5-8. Range Profile (Sheet 2 of 2)

ENDURANCE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
49 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the time during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

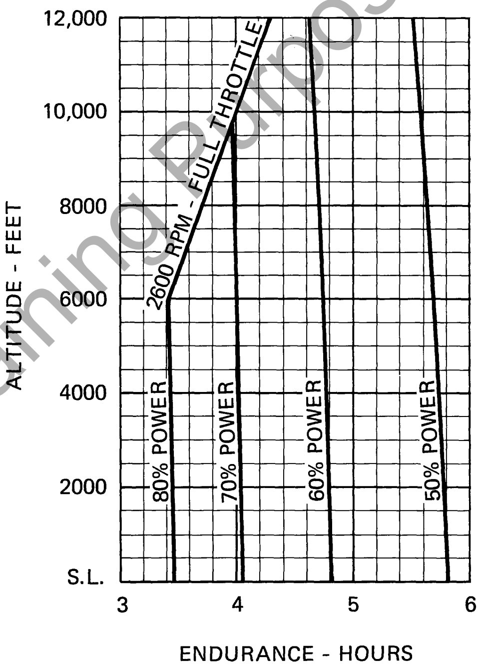


Figure 5-9. Endurance Profile (Sheet 1 of 2)

ENDURANCE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
66 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the time during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

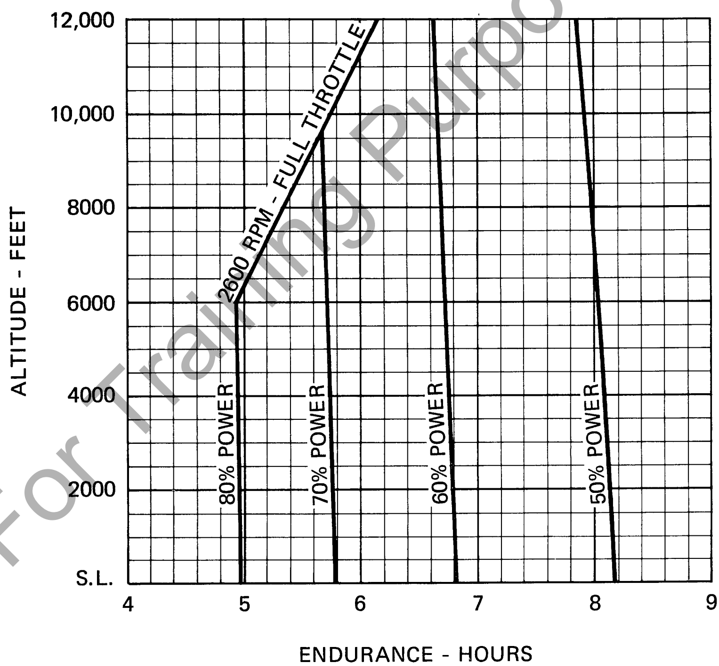


Figure 5-9. Endurance Profile (Sheet 2 of 2)

LANDING DISTANCE

SHORT FIELD

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 40°
Power Off
Maximum Braking
Paved, Level, Dry Runway
Zero Wind

NOTES:
1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tailwinds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
3. For operation on a dry, grass runway, increase distances by 40% of the "ground roll" figure.

WEIGHT LBS	SPEED AT 50 FT KIAS	PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
			GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2550	60	S.L.	590	1225	610	1255	630	1285	650	1315	675	1350
		1000	610	1255	630	1285	655	1320	675	1350	700	1390
		2000	630	1285	655	1320	680	1360	700	1390	725	1425
		3000	655	1320	680	1360	705	1395	730	1430	750	1465
		4000	680	1360	705	1395	730	1435	755	1470	780	1505
		5000	705	1395	730	1435	760	1475	785	1515	810	1550
		6000	735	1440	760	1475	785	1515	815	1560	840	1595
		7000	760	1480	790	1520	815	1560	845	1605	875	1645
		8000	790	1520	820	1565	850	1610	880	1655	905	1690

Figure 5-10. Landing Distance

SECTION 6
WEIGHT & BALANCE/ EQUIPMENT LIST

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

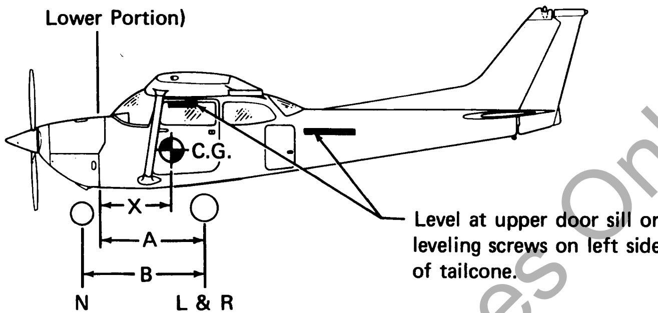
This section describes the procedure for establishing the basic empty weight and moment of the airplane. Sample forms are provided for reference. Procedures for calculating the weight and moment for various operations are also provided. A comprehensive list of all Cessna equipment available for this airplane is included at the back of this section.

It should be noted that specific information regarding the weight, arm, moment and installed equipment list for this airplane can only be found in the appropriate weight and balance records carried in the airplane.

It is the responsibility of the pilot to ensure that the airplane is loaded properly.

AIRPLANE WEIGHING PROCEDURES

1. Preparation:
   a. Inflate tires to recommended operating pressures.
   b. Remove the fuel tank sump quick-drain fittings and fuel selector valve drain plug to drain all fuel.
   c. Remove oil sump drain plug to drain all oil.
   d. Move sliding seats to the most forward position.
   e. Raise flaps to the fully retracted position.
   f. Place all control surfaces in neutral position.
2. Leveling:
   a. Place scales under each wheel (minimum scale capacity, 500 pounds nose, 1000 pounds each main).
   b. Deflate the nose tire and/or lower or raise the nose strut to properly center the bubble in the level (see figure 6-1).
3. Weighing:
   a. With the airplane level and brakes released, record the weight shown on each scale. Deduct the tare, if any, from each reading.
4. Measuring:
   a. Obtain measurement A by measuring horizontally (along the airplane center line) from a line stretched between the main wheel centers to a plumb bob dropped from the firewall.
   b. Obtain measurement B by measuring horizontally and parallel to the airplane center line, from center of nose wheel axle, left side, to a plumb bob dropped from the line between the main wheel centers. Repeat on right side and average the measurements.
5. Using weights from item 3 and measurements from item 4, the airplane weight and C.G. can be determined.
6. Basic Empty Weight may be determined by completing figure 6-1.



Scale Position	Scale Reading	Tare	Symbol	Net Weight
Left Wheel			L	
Right Wheel			R	
Nose Wheel			N	
Sum of Net Weights (As Weighed)			W	

$$X = ARM = (A) - \frac{(N) \times (B)}{W}\ ;\ X = (\quad) - \frac{(\quad) \times (\quad)}{(\quad)} = (\quad)\ \text{IN.}$$

Item	Weight (Lbs.)	X C.G. Arm (In.) =	Moment/1000 (Lbs.-In.)
Airplane Weight (From Item 5, page 6-3)			
Add: Oil (9 Qts at 7.5 Lbs/Gal)	17	-21.5	-0.4
Add Unusable Fuel: Std. Tanks (3 Gal at 6 Lbs/Gal)		46.0	
Long Range Tanks (2 Gal at 6 Lbs/Gal)		45.0	
Equipment Changes			
Airplane Basic Empty Weight			

Figure 6-1. Sample Airplane Weighing

SAMPLE WEIGHT AND BALANCE RECORD

(Continuous History of Changes in Structure or Equipment Affecting Weight and Balance)

AIRPLANE MODEL				SERIAL NUMBER					PAGE NUMBER		
DATE	ITEM NO.		DESCRIPTION OF ARTICLE OR MODIFICATION	WEIGHT CHANGE						RUNNING BASIC EMPTY WEIGHT	
				ADDED (+)			REMOVED (-)				
	In	Out		Wt. (lb.)	Arm (In.)	Moment /1000	Wt. (lb.)	Arm (In.)	Moment /1000	Wt. (lb.)	Moment /1000

Figure 6-2. Sample Weight and Balance Record

WEIGHT AND BALANCE

The following information will enable you to operate your Cessna within the prescribed weight and center of gravity limitations. To figure weight and balance, use the Sample Problem, Loading Graph, and Center of Gravity Moment Envelope as follows:

Take the basic empty weight and moment from appropriate weight and balance records carried in your airplane, and enter them in the column titled YOUR AIRPLANE on the Sample Loading Problem.

NOTE

In addition to the basic empty weight and moment noted on these records, the C.G. arm (fuselage station) is also shown, but need not be used on the Sample Loading Problem. The moment which is shown must be divided by 1000 and this value used as the moment/1000 on the loading problem.

Use the Loading Graph to determine the moment/1000 for each additional item to be carried; then list these on the loading problem.

NOTE

Loading Graph information for the pilot, passengers, and baggage is based on seats positioned for average occupants and baggage loaded in the center of the baggage areas as shown on the Loading Arrangements diagram. For loadings which may differ from these, the Sample Loading Problem lists fuselage stations for these items to indicate their forward and aft C.G. range limitations (seat travel and baggage area limitation). Additional moment calculations, based on the actual weight and C.G. arm (fuselage station) of the item being loaded, must be made if the position of the load is different from that shown on the Loading Graph.

Total the weights and moments/1000 and plot these values on the Center of Gravity Moment Envelope to determine whether the point falls within the envelope, and if the loading is acceptable.

LOADING ARRANGEMENTS

*Pilot or passenger center of gravity on adjustable seats positioned for average occupant. Numbers in parentheses indicate forward and aft limits of occupant center of gravity range.

**Arm measured to the center of the areas shown.

NOTES:
1. The usable fuel C.G. arm for standard and long range tanks is located at station 48.0.
2. The rear cabin wall (approximate station 108) or aft baggage wall (approximate station 142) can be used as convenient interior reference points for determining the location of baggage area fuselage stations.

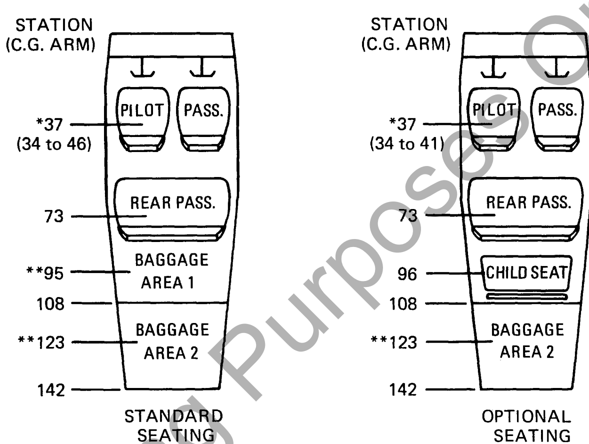
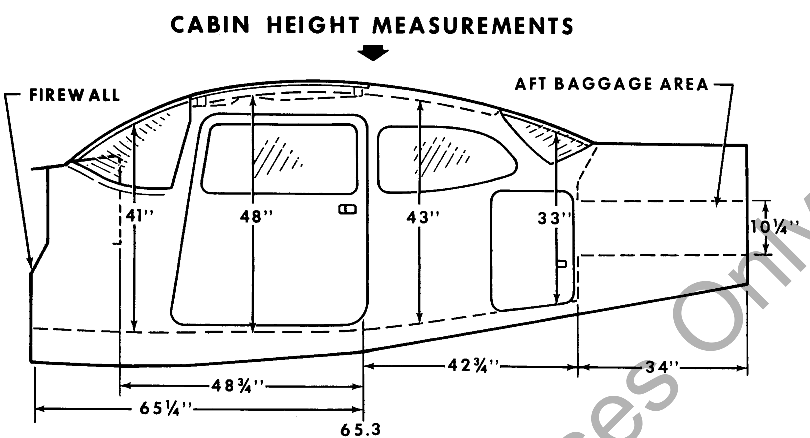


Figure 6-3. Loading Arrangements



DOOR OPENING DIMENSIONS

	WIDTH (TOP)	WIDTH (BOTTOM)	HEIGHT (FRONT)	HEIGHT (REAR)
CABIN DOOR	32"	37"	40"	41"
BAGGAGE DOOR	15¼"	15¼"	22"	21"

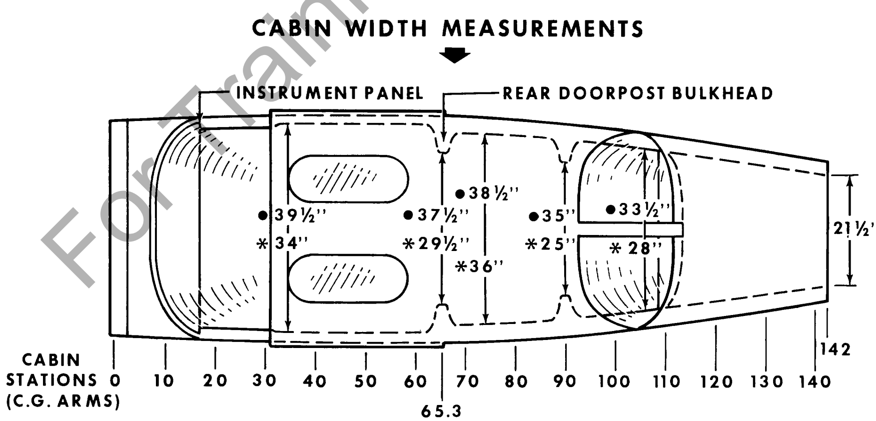


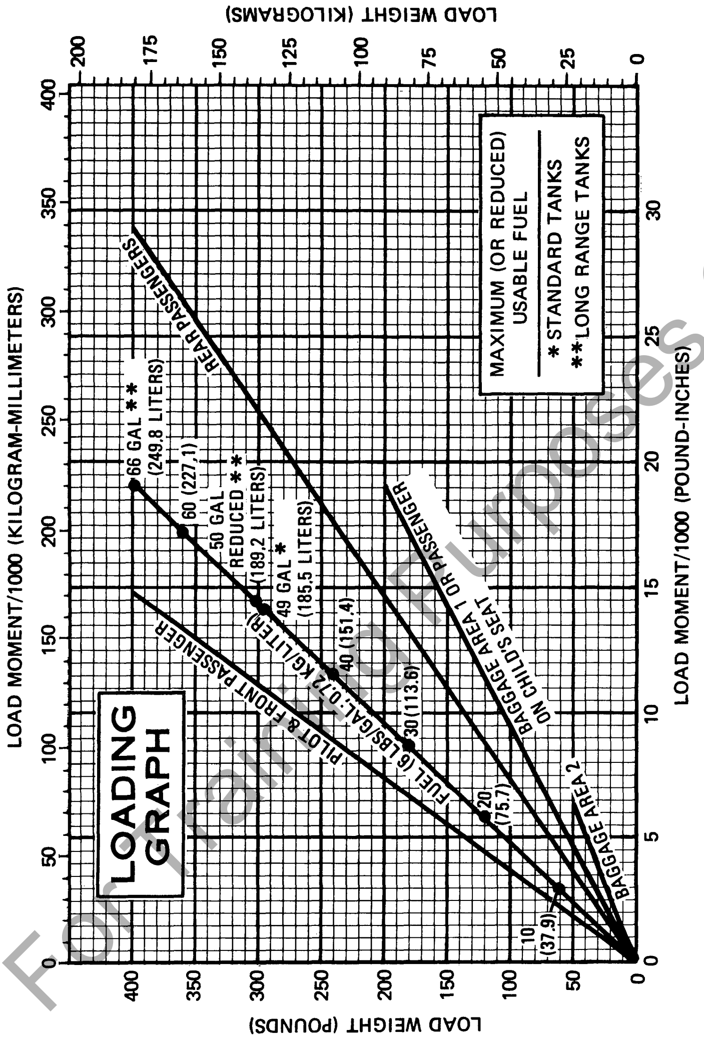
Figure 6-4. Internal Cabin Dimensions

SAMPLE LOADING PROBLEM	SAMPLE AIRPLANE		YOUR AIRPLANE	
	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (lb. -ins. /1000)	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (lb. - ins. /1000)
1. Basic Empty Weight (Use the data pertaining to your airplane as it is presently equipped. Includes unusable fuel and full oil)	1592	56.7		
2. Usable Fuel (At 6 Lbs./Gal.) Standard Tanks (49 Gal. Maximum)	294	14.1		
Long Range Tanks (66 Gal. Maximum)				
Reduced Fuel (50 Gal.)				
3. Pilot and Front Passenger (Station 34 to 46)	340	12.6		
4. Rear Passengers	170	12.4		
5. * Baggage Area 1 or Passenger on Child's Seat (Baggage, Station 82 to 108 - 200 Lbs. Max.; Passenger on Child's Seat - 120 Lbs. Max.)	162	15.4		
6. * Baggage Area 2 (Station 108 to 142 - 50 Lbs. Max.)				
7. RAMP WEIGHT AND MOMENT	2558	111.2		
8. Fuel allowance for engine start, taxi, and runup	-8	-.4		
9. TAKEOFF WEIGHT AND MOMENT (Subtract Step 8 from Step 7)	2550	110.8		

10. Locate this point (2550 at 110.8) on the Center of Gravity Moment Envelope, and since this point falls within the envelope, the loading is acceptable.

* The maximum allowable combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 200 lbs.

Figure 6-5. Sample Loading Problem



NOTE: Line representing adjustable seats shows the pilot or passenger center of gravity on adjustable seats positioned for an average occupant. Refer to the Loading Arrangements diagram for forward and aft limits of occupant C.G. range.

Figure 6-6. Loading Graph

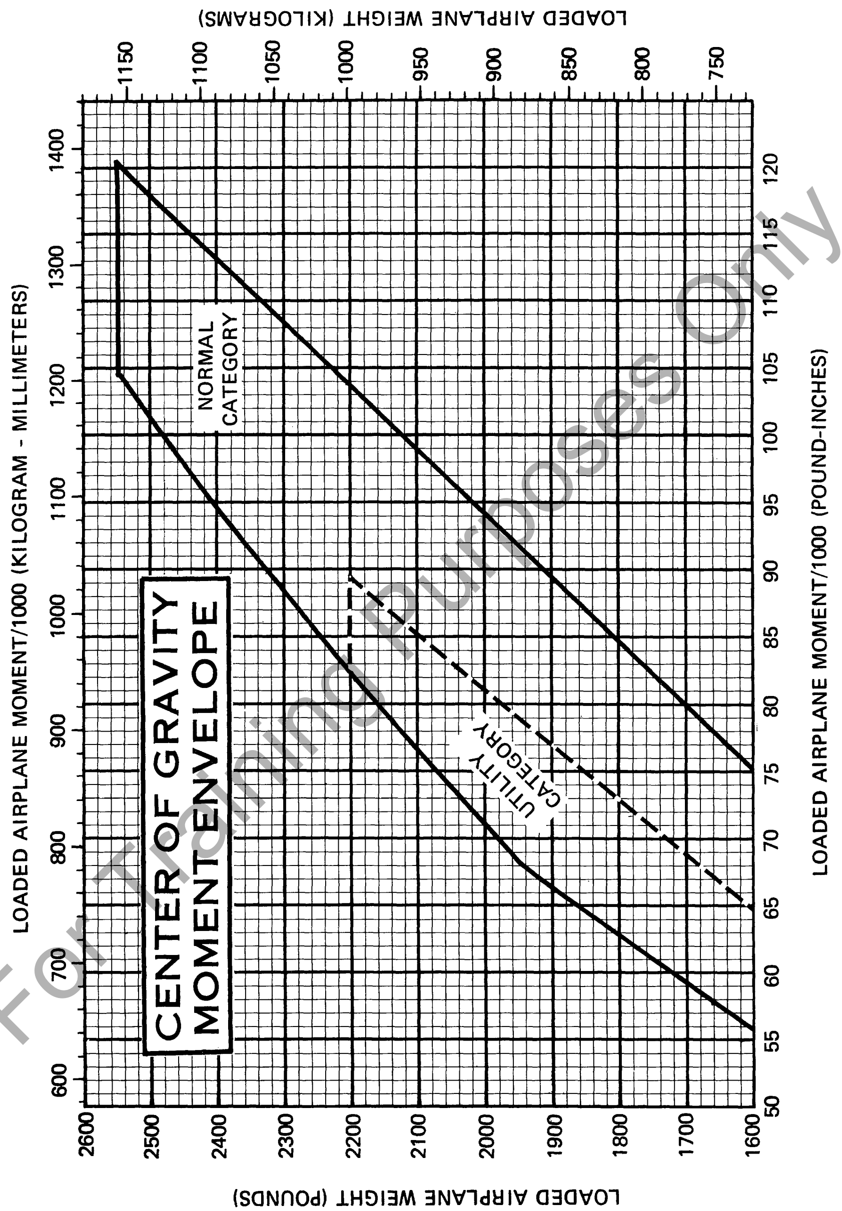


Figure 6-7. Center of Gravity Moment Envelope

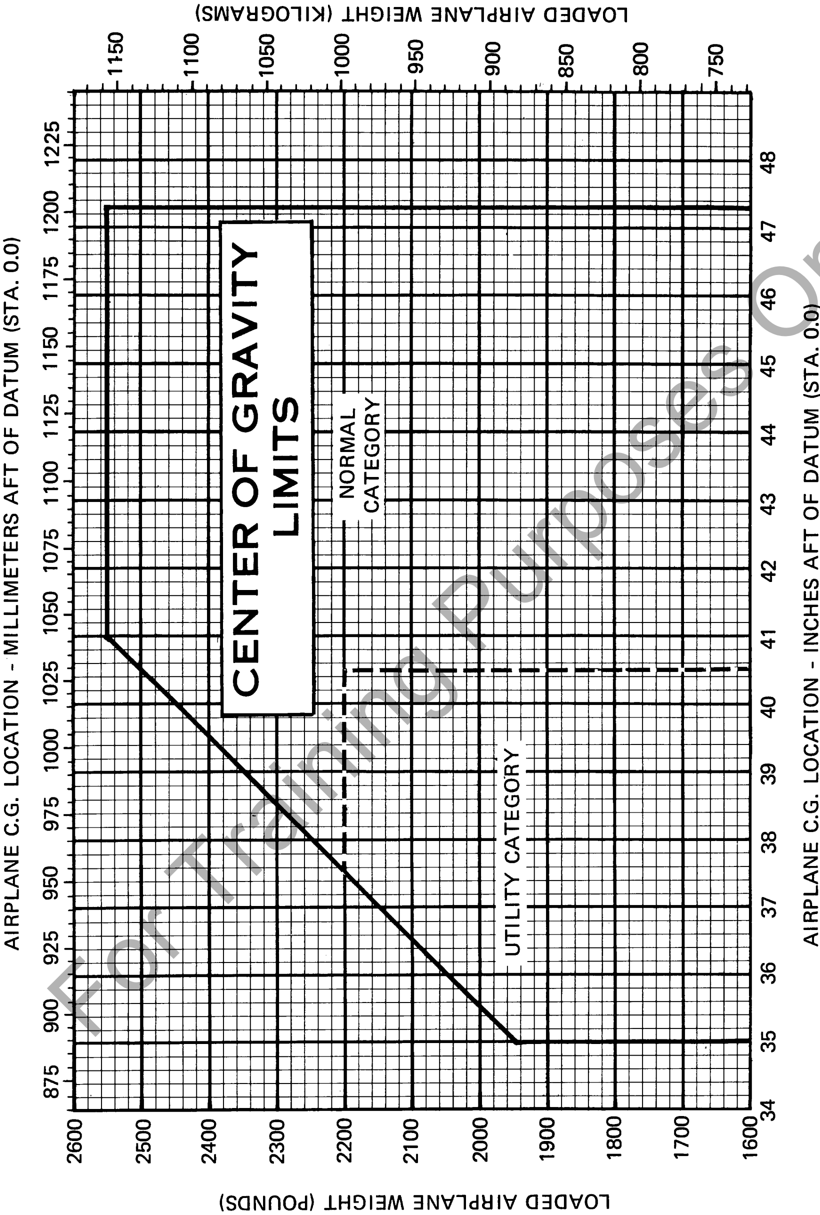


Figure 6-8. Center of Gravity Limits

EQUIPMENT LIST

The following equipment list is a comprehensive list of all Cessna equipment available for this airplane. A separate equipment list of items installed in your specific airplane is provided in your aircraft file. The following list and the specific list for your airplane have a similar order of listing.

This equipment list provides the following information:

An **item number** gives the identification number for the item. Each number is prefixed with a letter which identifies the **descriptive** grouping (example: A. Powerplant & Accessories) under which it is listed. Suffix letters identify the equipment as a required item, a standard item or an optional item. Suffix letters are as follows:

- -R = required items of equipment for FAA certification
- -S = standard equipment items
- -O = optional equipment items replacing required or standard items
- -A = optional equipment items which are in addition to required or standard items

A **reference drawing** column provides the drawing number for the item.

NOTE

If additional equipment is to be installed, it must be done in accordance with the reference drawing, accessory kit instructions, or a separate FAA approval.

Columns showing **weight (in pounds)** and **arm (in inches)** provide the weight and center of gravity location for the equipment.

NOTE

Unless otherwise indicated, true values (not net change values) for the weight and arm are shown. Positive arms are distances aft of the airplane datum; negative arms are distances forward of the datum.

NOTE

Asterisks (*) after the item weight and arm indicate complete assembly installations. Some major components of the assembly are listed on the lines immediately following. The summation of these major components does not necessarily equal the complete assembly installation.

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	A. POWERPLANT & ACCESSORIES			
A01-R	ENGINE, CONTINENTAL IO-360KB (INCLUDES ELECTRIC STARTER & VACUUM PAD)	0550330	340.0	-20.0
A05-R	FILTER, INDUCTION AIR	C294510-0401	1.0	-20.5
A09-R	ALTERNATOR, 28 VOLT, 60 AMP	C611502-0203	11.5	-5.5
A21-S	FILTER INSTALLATION, ENGINE FULL FLOW OIL	1556019-2	3.0*	-7.0*
	ADAPTER ASSEMBLY, CONTINENTAL			
	FILTER ELEMENT (SPIN ON)(GOLD COLOR)	641574	1.8	-7.0
A33-R	PROPELLER, CONSTANT SPEED (MCCAULEY 2A34C203/90DCA-14)	C161009-0108	50.0	-41.0
A33-O	PROPELLER, FLOATPLANE MCCAULEY 2A34C203/90DCA-10	C161009-0110	50.0	-41.0
A37-R	GOVERNOR, PROPELLER (MCCAULEY C290-D3/T15)	C161031-0108	3.0	-33.5
A41-S	SPINNER INSTALLATION, PROPELLER	0550337	3.4*	-41.4*
	SPINNER DOME	0550338-1	1.5	-44.2
A61-S	VACUUM SYSTEM INSTALLATION	0501054	4.3*	-2.3*
	VACUUM PUMP	C431003-0102	1.8	-3.0
	FILTER	1201075	0.2	4.7
	GAUGE	C668509-0101	0.1	16.2
	RELIEF VALVE & REGULATOR	C482001-0401	0.4	4.5
A70-R	PRIMER SYSTEM, ENGINE		0.5	-12.0
A73-O	OIL QUICK DRAIN VALVE (NET CHANGE)	1701015-3	0.0	- -
	B. LANDING GEAR & ACCESSORIES			
B01-R	WHEEL, BRAKE & TIRE ASSEMBLY, 600 X 6 MAIN (SET OF 2)	C163019-0202	42.5*	57.9*
	WHEEL ASSEMBLY (EACH)	C163006-0101	8.5	58.2
	BRAKE ASSEMBLY (LEFT)	C163032-0115	1.9	54.5
	BRAKE ASSEMBLY (RIGHT)	C163032-0116	1.9	54.5
	TIRE, 6-PLY BLACKWALL (EACH)	C262003-0204	8.7	58.2
	TUBE (EACH)	C262023-0102	2.0	58.2
B04-R	WHEEL & TIRE ASSEMBLY, NOSE	C163018-0104	8.6*	-6.8*
	WHEEL ASSEMBLY, MCCAULEY	C163005-0201	2.4	-6.8
	TIRE, 6 PLY BLACKWALL	C262003-0202	4.7	-6.8
	TUBE	C262023-0101	1.2	-6.8
B10-S	FAIRING INSTALLATION, WHEEL (SET OF THREE)	0541225-3	17.8*	47.1*
	NOSE WHEEL FAIRING		4.0	-4.9

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	MAIN WHEEL FAIRING (EACH)		5.7	60.3
	BRAKE FAIRINGS (2)		0.6	55.0
	C. ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS			
C01-R	BATTERY, 24 VOLT (STANDARD CAPACITY)	C614002-0101	23.2	115.0
C01-O	BATTERY, 24 VOLT (HEAVY DUTY)	C614002-0102	25.2	115.0
C04-R	ALTERNATOR CONTROL UNIT WITH LOW VOLTAGE SENSING	C611005-0101	0.4	3.4
C07-A	GROUND SERVICE PLUG RECEPTACLE	0501058	2.7	-2.0
C16-O	HEATED PITOT SYSTEM (NET CHANGE)	0422355-7	0.6	24.4
C22-A	LIGHTS, INSTRUMENT POST	0513094-20	0.5	17.3
C25-A	LIGHT INSTALLATION, CONTROL WHEEL MOUNTED MAP (INSTALLED WITH E89-O ONLY)	0501068	0.1	21.5
C28-S	LIGHT INSTALLATION, MAP & INSTRUMENT FLOOD--DOORPOST MOUNTED	0700149	0.3	32.0
C31-A	LIGHTS, COURTESY (SET OF TWO)	0521101	0.5	61.0
C40-A	DETECTORS, NAVIGATION LIGHT (SET OF TWO)	0701013	0.0	-
C43-A	LIGHT INSTALLATION, OMNIFLASH BEACON	0506003-5	1.4*	204.7*
	BEACON LIGHT IN FIN TIP	C621001-0102	0.4	242.5
	FLASHER POWER SUPPLY IN VERTICAL TAIL	C594502-0102	0.6	205.1
	RESISTOR - MEMCOR (7174)	OR95-6	0.2	208.3
C46-A	LIGHT INSTALLATION, WING TIP STROBE	0501027-1	3.4*	43.3*
	FLASHER POWER SUPPLY, WING TIP RIB (2)	C622008-0102	2.3	47.0
	STROBE LIGHT, WING TIP (SET OF TWO)	C622006-0107	0.2	40.8
C49-S	LIGHTS, LANDING, COWL MOUNTED - DUAL BULB	0501032	4.1	-18.6
	D. INSTRUMENTS			
D01-R	INDICATOR, AIRSPEED	C661064-0104	0.6	16.0
D01-O	INDICATOR, TRUE AIRSPEED	0513279	0.7	16.3
D04-A	STATIC AIR, ALTERNATE SOURCE	0501017	0.2	15.5
D07-R	ALTIMETER, SENSITIVE (INCHES OF MERCURY)	C661071-0101	0.7	14.0
D07-O-1	ALTIMETER, SENSITIVE (FEET & MILLIBARS) (50 FT. MARKINGS)	C661071-0102	0.7	14.0
D07-O-2	ALTIMETER, SENSITIVE (FEET & MILLIBARS) (20 FT. MARKINGS)	C661025-0102	0.7	14.0
D10-A	ALTIMETER INSTALLATION - DUAL	2001015	1.0	14.0

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
D16-A-1	ALTIMETER, ENCODING (REQUIRES RELOCATION OF REGULAR TYPE ALTIMETER)	0501049	3.0	14.8
D16-A-2	ALTITUDE ENCODER (BLIND, DOES NOT REQUIRE INSTRUMENT PANEL MOUNTING)	0501059	1.5*	14.4*
	ENCODER	C744001-0101	1.3	14.6
D25-S	CLOCK, ELECTRIC	C664508-0102	0.4	16.3
D25-O	CLOCK, ELECTRIC DIGITAL READOUT	C664511-0101	0.4	
D28-R	COMPASS INSTALLATION, MAGNETIC	0513262	0.5	26.0
D38-R	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, LH & RH FUEL	C669537-0101	0.4	16.2
D41-R	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, CYL HEAD AND OIL TEMP	C669538-0101	0.4	16.2
D43-R	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, AMMETER & OIL PRES	C669527-0101	0.5	16.2
D49-A	INDICATOR, ECONOMY MIXTURE (E.G.T.)	0501043	0.6	7.8
D55-R	GAGE, MANIFOLD PRESSURE & FUEL FLOW	C662037-0108	1.1	16.5
D64-S	GYRO INSTALLATION, ATTITUDE & DIRECTIONAL (NON NAV-O-MATIC)	0501054	6.3*	13.6*
	DIRECTIONAL INDICATOR	C661075-0104	2.7	14.7
	ATTITUDE INDICATOR	C661076-0101	2.5	14.3
D64-O	GYRO INSTALLATION FOR 300 NAV-O-MATIC (ARC)	0501054	6.9*	13.4*
	DIRECTIONAL INDICATOR	40760-0101	3.3	14.3
	ATTITUDE INDICATOR	C661076-0101	2.5	14.3
D67-A	RECORDER, FLIGHT HOUR	0501052	0.5	6.3
D82-S	GAGE, OUTSIDE AIR TEMP (C668507-0101)	0500221	0.1	28.6
D85-R	TACHOMETER INSTALLATION	0506005	1.0*	13.0*
	RECORDING TACH HEAD	C668020-0105	0.6	15.5
D88-S-1	TURN COORDINATOR (28 VOLT OPERATION)	C661003-0505	1.3	15.8
D88-S-2	TURN COORDINATOR (10 TO 30 VOLT)	C661003-0506	1.3	15.8
D88-O	TURN COORDINATOR (FOR AUTO-PILOT USE)	42320-0028	1.3	15.8
D91-A	INDICATOR, VERTICAL SPEED	C661080-0101	1.0	15.7
	E. CABIN ACCOMMODATIONS			
E05-R	SEAT, ADJUSTABLE FORE & AFT, PILOT	0514168	12.6	44.0
E05-O	SEAT, INFINITE ADJUSTING, PILOT	0514171	23.0	41.5
E07-S	SEAT, ADJUSTABLE FORE & AFT, CO-PILOT	0514168	12.6	44.0
E07-O	SEAT, INFINITE ADJUSTING, CO-PILOT	0514171	23.0	41.5
E09-S	SEAT, REAR (ONE PIECE BACK CUSHION)	0514169	22.0	79.5
E09-O	SEAT, REAR (TWO PIECE BACK CUSHION)	0514170	23.0	79.5
E15-R	BELT ASSEMBLY, PILOT LAP	S-2275-103	1.0	37.0
E15-S	SHOULDER HARNESS ASSEMBLY, PILOT	S-2275-201	0.6	37.0
E19-O	INERTIA REEL-SEAT BELT INSTALLATION,	0501046-1	2.0	82.0

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	PILOT & CO-PILOT (NET CHANGE)			
E23-S	BELT & SHOULDER HARNESS ASSY, CO-PILOT	S-2275-3	1.6	37.0
E27-S	SEAT BELT ASSEMBLY, REAR (SET OF TWO)	S-1746-13	2.0	70.0
E27-O	BELT & SHOULDER HARNESS ASSY, 2ND ROW (2)	S-2275-8	3.2	70.0
E33-O	CARPETING, BLACK, NET CHANGE FOR STANDARD		0.0	- -
E35-A-1	SEAT COVERING, VINYL, NET CHANGE		0.0	- -
E35-A-2	SEAT COVERING, LEATHER, NET CHANGE	CES-1151	2.0	62.0
E37-A	WINDOW, RIGHT DOOR HINGED (NET CHANGE)	0501075	2.3	47.0
E39-A	WINDOWS, OVERHEAD CABIN TOP (NET INCREASE)	0511800	0.9	47.9
E43-A	VENTILATION SYSTEM, REAR SEAT	0700322	1.7	50.9
E49-A	CUP HOLDER, RETRACTABLE (SET OF TWO)	0501023	0.1	15.5
E50-A	HEADREST, FRONT (SET OF TWO)	1215073	1.5	47.0
E51-A	HEADREST, REAR (SET OF TWO)	1215073	1.5	86.0
E55-S	SUN VISORS (SET OF 2)	0514166	0.9	32.8
E57-O	TINTED GLASS (ALL AROUND) (NET CHANGE)		0.0	- -
E65-R	BAGGAGE TIE DOWN NET	2015009-8	0.5	95.0
E71-A	RINGS, CARGO TIE DOWN	0500042	1.0	-
E85-A	CONTROLS, DUAL (CO-PILOT'S WHEEL, PEDALS AND TOE BRAKES)	0513335	4.9*	12.4*
	CONTROL WHEEL WITH PROTECTIVE PADDING		2.0	26.0
	RUDDER PEDAL (SET OF TWO)	0510402	1.1	6.8
E87-S	RUDDER TRIM SYSTEM	0513290	1.9	9.4
E88-A	CABIN AIR CIRCULATING FAN (CANNOT BE USED WITH E43-A)	0501072	10.0	100.0
E89-O	ALL PURPOSE CONTROL WHEEL, NET CHANGE	0501068	NEGL	- -
	F. PLACARDS, WARNINGS & MANUALS			
F01-R	PLACARD, OPERATIONAL LIMITATIONS VFR DAY	0505087	0.0	- -
F01-O-1	PLACARD, OPERATIONAL LIMITATIONS VFR DAY-NIGHT	0505087	0.0	- -
F01-O-2	PLACARD, OPERATIONAL LIMITATIONS IFR DAY-NIGHT	0505087	0.0	- -
F04-R	STALL WARNING HORN (PNEUMATIC)	0523112	0.5	28.5
F10-S	PILOTS CHECK LIST (STANDARD A/C)(STOWED)	0505063	0.0	- -
F10-O-1	PILOTS CHECK LIST (200A NAV-O-MATIC)	- -	0.0	- -
F10-O-2	PILOTS CHECK LIST (300A NAV-O-MATIC)	0505066	0.0	- -
F16-R	PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL	D1173-13PH	0.5	- -

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	G. AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT			
G07-A	RINGS, AIRPLANE HOISTING	0541115	1.1	49.1
G13-A	CORROSION PROOFING, INTERNAL	0500036	10.0	77.0
G16-A	STATIC DISCHARGER INSTALLATION (SET OF 10)	0501048	0.4	143.2
G19-A	STABILIZER ABRASION BOOTS	0500041	2.7	206.0
G22-S	TOW BAR (STOWED)	0501019	1.6	95.0
G25-S	PAINT SCHEME, OVERALL EXTERIOR COVER	0504040	12.5*	90.4*
	OVERALL BASE WHITE		11.6	90.5
	STRIPE COLOR SCHEME		0.5	88.8
G31-A	CABLES, CORROSION RESISTANT CONTROL (NET CHANGE)	0500036	0.0	-
G55-A-1	FIRE EXTINGUISHER, STD PILOT SEATING	0501011	3.0	45.5
G55-A-2	FIRE EXTINGUISHER, VTL ADJ PILOT SEAT	2401011	3.2	29.0
G58-A	STEPS AND HANDLE, REFUELING	0513415	1.7	17.8
G67-A	RUDDER PEDAL EXTENSIONS, REMOVABLE - SET OF 2 (STOWABLE - INSTALLED ARM SHOWN) (NOT FACTORY INSTALLED)	0701048	2.3	8.0
G88-A	WINTERIZATION KIT INSTALLATION, ENGINE	0501007-1	1.0*	-24.3*
	COVER PLATE, FWD COWL (INSTALLED)	0552132	0.4	-32.0
	COVER PLATE, FWD COWL (STOWED)		0.4	95.0
G92-O	EXTENDED RANGE WINGS (WET WING) NET CHANGE	0501063	-21.4	46.6
	H. AVIONICS & AUTOPILOTS			
H01-A	CESSNA 300 ADF INSTALLATION	3910159-2	8.0*	19.9*
	CONSISTS OF--			
	RECEIVER WITH BFO (R-546E-1)	41420-0001	3.3	12.1
	INDICATOR (IN-346A)	40980-1001	0.9	14.0
	SENSE ANTENNA INSTALLATION	0570400-632	0.2	108.6
	LOOP ANTENNA INSTALLATION	--	1.4	39.3
	RECEIVER MOUNT, WIRES AND MISC ITEMS		2.2	13.7
H04-A	DME INSTALLATION, NARCO	3910166	7.5*	18.5*
	TRANSCEIVER (DME-190)	3312-406	6.5	11.3
	MOUNT ASSY		0.6	11.3
	ANTENNA INSTALLATION		0.2	86.1
H05-A	FOSTER 511 R-NAV INSTALLATION	3910203-1	3.4*	11.8*
	RECEIVER & MOUNT		2.4	14.5
H07-A	CESSNA 400 GLIDESLOPE (INCLUDES VOR/ILS	3910157	4.4*	81.1*

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	INDICATOR--EXCHANGE FOR VOR/LOC)			
	RECEIVER (R-443B)	42100-0000	2.1	117.0
	ANTENNA (LOCATED UPPER WINDSHIELD)	1200098	0.2	30.0
	VOR/ILS INDICATOR ADDED	46860-2000	1.7	14.7
	VOR/LOC INDICATOR DELETED	46860-1000	-1.6	14.7
H08-A-1	AUTO RADIAL CENTERING INDICATOR ARC/LOC EXCHANGE FOR VOR/LOC IN ITEM H22-A AND H25-A (WT NET CHANGE)		0.2*	14.7*
	ARC/LOC INDICATOR ADDED	46860-1200	1.8	14.7
	VOR/LOC INDICATOR DELETED	46860-1000	-1.6	14.7
H08-A-2	AUTO RADIAL CENTERING INDICATOR ARC/ILS EXCHANGE FOR VOR/ILS, USED WITH H07-A ONLY, WT IS NET CHANGE		0.1*	14.7*
	ARC/ILS INDICATOR ADDED	46860-2200	1.9	14.7
	VOR/ILS INDICATOR DELETED	46860-2000	-1.8	14.7
H11-A-1	PANTRONICS PT10-A HF TRANSCEIVER, 2ND OR 3RD UNIT	3910193-2	20.1*	89.3*
	TRANSCEIVER (PANEL MOUNTED)	C582103-0102	4.2	10.4
	ANTENNA LOAD BOX	C589502-0201	4.2	112.5
	HF POWER SUPPLY (REMOTE)	C582103-0301	8.5	114.4
	POWER & SIGNAL CABLES	3950122-15	2.5	41.0
	ANTENNA INSTALLATION, 351 IN. LONG	3960117-3	0.3	144.4
H11-A-2	SUNAIR ASB-125 HF TRANSCEIVER, 2ND OR 3RD UNIT	3910158-1	22.0*	82.8*
	ANTENNA LOAD BOX	99816	4.9	112.0
	POWER SUPPLY (REMOTE)	99683	8.5	114.0
	TRANSCEIVER (PANEL MOUNTED)	99681	4.6	10.4
	ANTENNA INSTALLATION, 351 IN. LONG	3960117-3	0.3	144.4
H13-A	CESSNA 400 MARKER BEACON	3910164-1	2.3*	34.5*
	RECEIVER (R-402A)	42410-5128	0.7	11.8
	ANTENNA, L SHAPED ROD	0770681-1	0.7	136.0
H16-A-1	CESSNA 300 TRANSPONDER	3910127-17	4.0*	25.8*
	TRANSCEIVER (RT-359A)	41420-0028	2.7	11.1
	ANTENNA	42940-0000	0.3	127.0
H16-A-2	CESSNA 400 TRANSPONDER	3910128-21	4.2*	25.1*
	TRANSCEIVER (RT-459A)	41470-1028	2.9	11.1
	ANTENNA	42940-0000	0.3	127.0
H22-A	CESSNA 300 NAV/COM 720 CH COM, 1ST UNIT REQUIRES H34-A TO BE OPERATIONAL	3910183	8.3*	11.9*
	RECEIVER-TRANSCEIVER (RT-385A)	46660-1000	5.5	11.5
	VOR/LOC INDICATOR (IN-385A)	46860-1000	1.6	14.7
	MOUNT, WIRING & MISC ITEMS		1.2	10.0

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
H25-A	CESSNA 300 NAV/COM 720 CH COM 2ND UNIT	3910183	8.3*	11.9*
	REQUIRES H37-A TO BE OPERATIONAL			
	RECEIVER-TRANSCEIVER (RT-385A)	46660-1000	5.5	11.5
	VOR/LOC INDICATOR (IN-385A)	46860-1000	1.6	14.7
	MOUNT, WIRING & MISC ITEMS		1.2	10.0
	RECEIVER-TRANSCEIVER (RT-385A)	46660-1100	5.5	11.5
H28-A-1	EMERGENCY LOCATER TRANSMITTER	0470419-3	3.5*	116.5*
	TRANSMITTER (D & M DMELT-6-1)	C589511-0117	3.3	116.4
	ANTENNA	C589511-0109	0.1	122.0
H28-A-2	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (USED IN	0470419-4	3.5	116.5*
	CANADA)			
	TRANSMITTER (D & M DMELT-6-1C)	C589511-0113	3.3	116.4
	ANTENNA	C589511-0109	0.1	122.0
H31-A-1	NAV-O-MATIC 200A	3910162-9	9.2*	51.0*
	CONTROLLER & MOUNT (CA-295B)	3930144-2	1.6	13.1
	TURN COORDINATOR (NET CHNG) (G-300A)	42320-0028	0.0	- -
	RELAY INSTALLATION	3970143	0.4	4.0
	WING INSTALLATION (SERVO IS 3.9 LBS AT	0522632-4	6.1	68.1
	68.9 INCHES)(PA-495)			
H31-A-2	NAV-O-MATIC 300A (AF395)	3910163-9	10.3*	46.4*
	CONTROLLER-AMPLIFIER & MOUNT (CA-395A)	3930145-19	1.8	13.1
	GYRO INSTALLATION (D64-A-2) (NET CHNG)	0501054	0.6	11.3
	TURN COORDINATOR (NET CHANGE)	42320-0028	0.0	- -
	RELAY INSTALLATION	3970143	0.4	4.0
	WING INSTALLATION (SERVO IS 3.9 LBS AT	0522632-5	6.1	68.1
	68.9 INCHES)(PA-495)			
	MISC WIRING & HARDWARE ITEMS	42730-4008	1.5	25.1
H34-A	BASIC AVIONICS KIT INSTALLATION	3910186-3	7.0*	52.9*
	RADIO COOLING	3930208	1.1	10.2
	NOISE FILTER INSTALLATION	3940148-1	0.1	-2.0
	COM ANTENNA CABLE, LH VHF	3950122-3	0.4	27.8
	OMNI ANTENNA CABLE		0.6	116.0
	OMNI ANTENNA	3960102-10	0.8	220.8
	COM ANTENNA, LH VHF	3960113-1	0.4	62.4
	CABIN SPEAKER INSTL.	3970123-5	1.2	37.9
	MIKE INSTL, HAND HELD	3970124-5	0.3	17.2
	HEADPHONE INSTL (STOWED ARM SHOWN)	3970125-4	0.2	14.2
	AUDIO CONTROL PANEL INSTL.	3970143	1.9	12.5
H37-A	COM ANTENNA & OMNI COUPLER KIT	3910185	1.0*	25.0*
	COM ANTENNA CABLE, RH VHF	3950122-2	0.4	27.8
	OMNI ANTENNA COUPLER (SIGNAL SPLITTER)	3960111-3	0.2	7.0
	COM ANTENNA, RH VHF	3960113-2	0.4	62.4

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
H43-A	AVIONICS OPTION D NAV-O-MATIC WING PROV.	0522632-2	1.7	68.2
H55-A	MIKE-HEADSET COMBO. INSTL (HEADSET STOWED) (REQUIRES ALL PURPOSE CONTROL WHEEL, ITEM E89-A)	C596530-0101	0.3	13.0
H56-A	MICROPHONE/HEADSET, PADDED (STOWED) (REQUIRES ALL PURPOSE CONTROL WHEEL, ITEM E89-A)	C596531-0101	1.1	- -
	J. SPECIAL OPTION PACKAGES			
J01-A	HAWK-XP II EQUIPMENT CONSISTS OF ITEMS	0500511	26.9*	49.5*
	C16-O HEATED PITOT SYSTEM	0422355-7	0.6	24.4
	C31-A COURTESY LIGHTS	0521101	0.5	61.0
	C40-A NAV LIGHT DETECTORS	0701013	NEGL	- -
	C43-A FLASHING BEACON LIGHT	0506003-3	1.4	204.7
	D01-O TRUE AIRSPEED IND. (NET CHANGE)	0513279	0.1	18.1
	D04-A STATIC AIR, ALTERNATE SOURCE	0501017	0.2	15.5
	F85-A DUAL CONTROLS	0506005	4.9	12.4
	G16-A STATIC DISCHARGERS		0.4	143.2
	H22-A NAV/COM RT-385A VOR/LOC	3910183	8.3	11.9
	H28-A-1 EMERGENCY LOCATER TRANSMITTER	0470419	3.5	116.5
	H34-A BASIC AVIONIC KIT	3910186	7.0	52.9
J04-A	NAV-PAC INSTALLATION (AVAILABLE XP II)		21.3*	18.1*
	H01-A 300 ADF (R-546-E)	3910159-2	8.0	19.9
	H16-A-1 300 TRANSPONDER (RT-359A)	3910127-17	4.0	25.8
	H25-A 300 NAV/COM, 2ND UNIT		8.3	11.9
	H37-A COM ANT. AND NAV COUPLER KIT	3910185	1.0	25.0
J10-A	FLOATPLANE FUSELAGE STRUCTURAL MODIFICATIONS & FITTINGS (FLOATPLANE OPTION C)	0500044-45	7.9	43.0
J13-A	FLOATPLANE COWLDECK V BRACE (INSTALLED)	0513003	1.1	26.2
	(STOWED)		1.1	95.0
J15-A	FLOATPLANE AILERON-RUDDER INTERCONNECT	0560012		
	FLOATPLANE ONLY (INSTALLED)		0.5	60.1
	(STOWED)		0.5	95.0
	ITEMS J10-A & J13-A ARE ALSO APPROVED FOR LANDPLANE OPERATIONS			
J27-A	MODEL 248B-2440 FLOATS AND ATTACHMENTS NET CHANGE BETWEEN STANDARD LANDING GEAR (ITEM NOS. B01-R, B04-R, B10-S AND BRAKE & NOSE WHEEL STEERING SYS-	EDO 248B-2440	- -	- -

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	TEMS) AND FLOATPLANE KIT (ITEM NO, J30-A-1) IS APPROXIMATELY 235 LBS AT 43.2 IN. THE CORRECT VALUES OF WT & ARM CHANGE FOR WT & BALANCE CALCULATION SHOULD BE DETERMINED FROM ACTUAL INSTALLATION WEIGHING.			
J30-A-1	FLOATPLANE EQUIPMENT KIT, COMPLETE--WITH PROP CHANGE & CORROSION PROOFING--	0501065	26.8*	56.3*
	A33-0 PROPELLER, FLOATPLANE, EXCHANGE		0.0	- -
	F01-0- PLACARD, FLOATPLANE OPERATIONS		NEGL	- -
	G31-A CABLES, CORROSION RESIS, EXCH.	0500036	NEGL	- -
	G13-A CORROSION PROOFING, INTERNAL	0500036	10.0	77.0
	G07-A RINGS, AIRPLANE HOISTING	0541115	1.1	49.1
	G58-A STEP & HANDLE, REFUELING	0513415	1.7	17.8
	J10-A FUSELAGE MODIFICATIONS	0500044	7.9	43.0
	J13-A COWL DECK V BRACE (INSTALLED)	0513003	1.1	26.2
	J15-A INTERCONNECT RUDDER-AILERON INSTALLED	0560012	0.5	60.1
	RUDDER CONTROL SPRINGS (STOWED, INSTALLED ARM SHOWN)		1.2	220.5
	NOSE STRUT STUB (STOWED, INSTALLED ARM SHOWN)		3.3	-3.0
J30-A-2	FLOATPLANE EQUIPMENT KIT, COMPLETE--WITH PROP CHANGE & NO CORROSION PROOFING--	0501065	16.8*	43.2*
	A33-0 PROPELLER, FLOATPLANE, EXCHANGE		0.0	- -
	F01-0- FLOATPLANE OPERATIONS PLACARD		NEGL	- -
	G07-A RINGS, AIRPLANE HOISTING	0541115	1.1	49.1
	G58-A STEP & HANDLE, REFUELING	0513415	1.7	17.8
	J10-A FUSELAGE STRUCTURE MODIFICATION	0500044	7.9	43.0
	J13-A COWL DECK BRACE--INSTALLED	0513003	1.1	26.2
	J15-A INTERCONNECT RUDDER-AILERON INSTALLED	0560012	0.5	60.1
	RUDDER CONTROL SPRINGS (STOWED) (INSTALLED ARM SHOWN)		1.2	210.5
	NOSE STRUT STUB (STOWED, INSTALLED ARM SHOWN)		3.3	-3.0
J30-A-3	FLOATPLANE EQUIPMENT KIT--WITH NO PROP CHANGE OR CORROSION PROOFING	0501065	12.3	45.4*
	F01-0- FLOATPLANE OPERATION PLACARD		NEGL	- -
	G07-A RINGS, AIRPLANE HOISTING	0541115	1.1	49.1
	G58-A STEP & HANDLE, REFUELING	0513415	1.7	17.8
	J10-A FUSELAGE MODIFICATIONS	0500044	7.9	43.0

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	J13-A COWL DECK BRACE- STOWED	0513003	1.1	95.0
	J15-A INTERCONNECT SYSTEM (STOWED) INSTALLED ARM SHOWN	0560012	0.5	60.1
J30-A-4	FLOATPLANE KIT WITH CORROSION PROOFING BUT NO PROP CHANGE	0501065-5	22.3*	59.6*
	F01-O- FLOATPLANE OPERATIONS PLACARD		NEGL	- -
	G07-A AIRPLANE HOISTING PROVISIONS	0541115	1.1	49.1
	G13-A CORROSION PROOFING, INTERNAL	0500036	10.0	77.0
	G31-A CORROSION RESISTANT CONTROL CABLES		NEGL	- -
	J10-A FUSELAGE MODIFICATIONS	0500044	7.9	43.0
	J13-A COWL DECK BRACE--STOWED	0513003	1.1	95.0
	J15-A INTERCONNECT SYSTEM (STOWED) INSTALLED ARM SHOWN	0560012	0.5	60.1
	G58-A STEP & HANDLE, REFUELING	0513415	1.7	17.8

SECTION 7
AIRPLANE & SYSTEMS DESCRIPTIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

This section provides description and operation of the airplane and its systems. Some equipment described herein is optional and may not be installed in the airplane. Refer to Section 9, Supplements, for details of other optional systems and equipment.

AIRFRAME

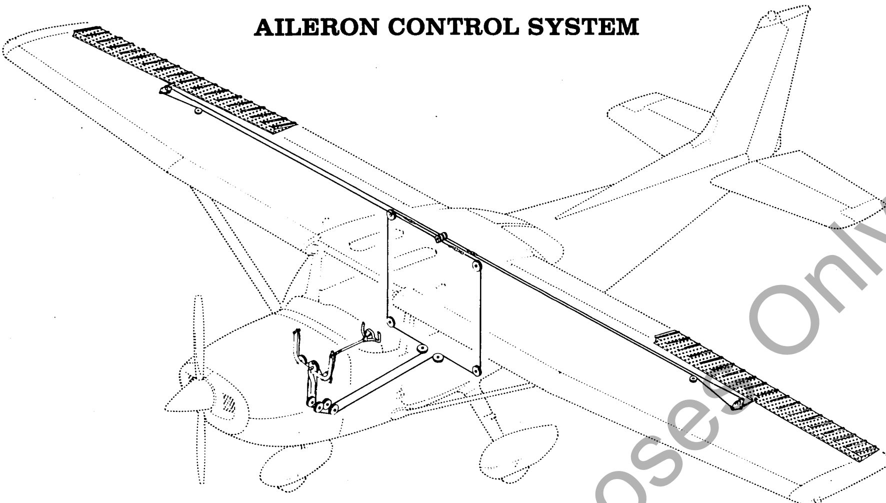
The airplane is an all-metal, four-place, high-wing, single-engine airplane equipped with tricycle landing gear and designed for general utility purposes.

The construction of the fuselage is a conventional formed sheet metal bulkhead, stringer, and skin design referred to as semimonocoque. Major items of structure are the front and rear carry-through spars to which the wings are attached, a bulkhead and forgings for main landing gear attachment at the base of the rear door posts, and a bulkhead with attach fittings at the base of the forward door posts for the lower attachment of the wing struts. Four engine mount stringers are also attached to the forward door posts and extend forward to the firewall.

The externally braced wings, containing the fuel tanks, are constructed of a front and rear spar with formed sheet metal ribs, doublers, and stringers. The entire structure is covered with aluminum skin. The front spars are equipped with wing-to-fuselage and wing-to-strut attach fittings. The aft spars are equipped with wing-to-fuselage attach fittings, and are partial-span spars. Conventional hinged ailerons and single-slotted flaps are attached to the trailing edge of the wings. The ailerons are constructed of a forward spar containing balance weights, formed sheet metal ribs and "V" type corrugated aluminum skin joined together at the trailing edge. The flaps are constructed basically the same as the ailerons, with the exception of the balance weights and the addition of a formed sheet metal leading edge section.

The empennage (tail assembly) consists of a conventional vertical stabilizer, rudder, horizontal stabilizer, and elevator. The vertical stabilizer consists of a spar, formed sheet metal ribs and reinforcements, a wrap-around skin panel, formed leading edge skin, and a dorsal. The rudder is constructed of a formed leading edge skin containing hinge halves, a center wrap-around skin panel, ribs, an aft wrap-around skin panel which is joined at the trailing edge of the rudder by a filler strip, and a ground adjustable trim tab at the base of the trailing edge. The top of the rudder incorporates a leading edge extention which contains a balance weight. The horizontal stabilizer is constructed of a forward and aft spar, ribs and

AILERON CONTROL SYSTEM



RUDDER AND RUDDER TRIM CONTROL SYSTEMS

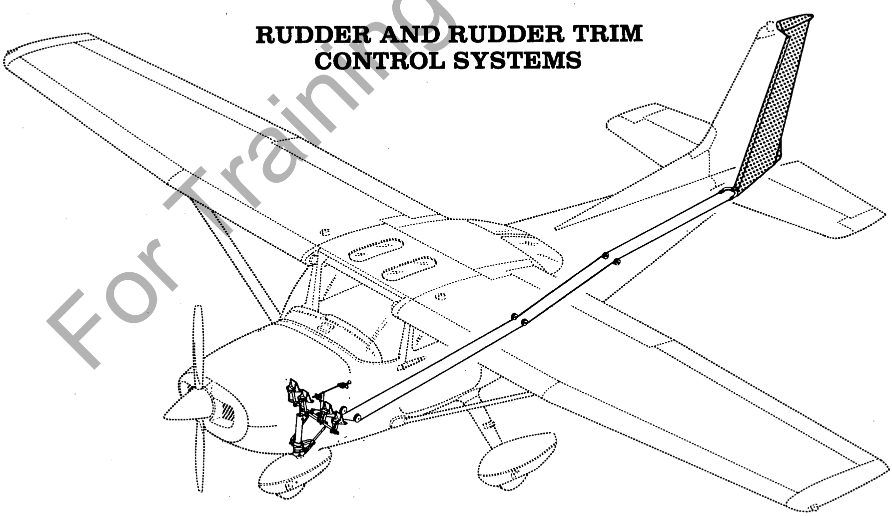
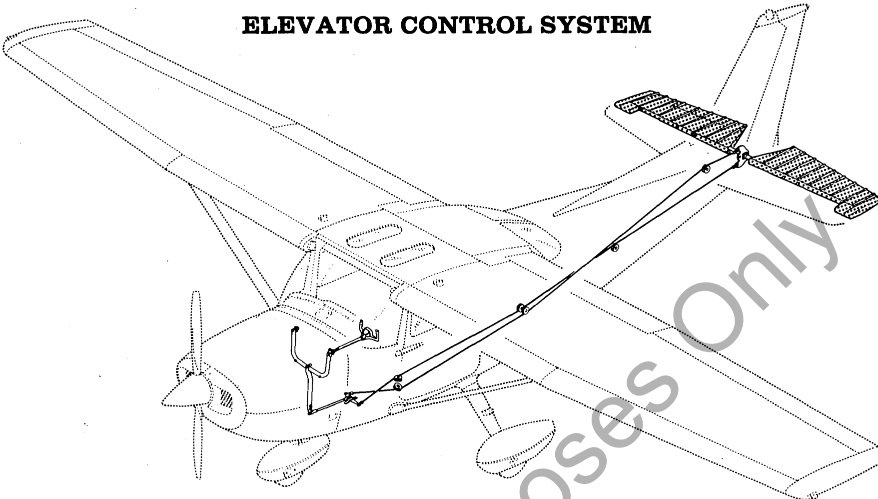


Figure 7-1. Flight Control and Trim Systems (Sheet 1 of 2)

ELEVATOR CONTROL SYSTEM



ELEVATOR TRIM CONTROL SYSTEM

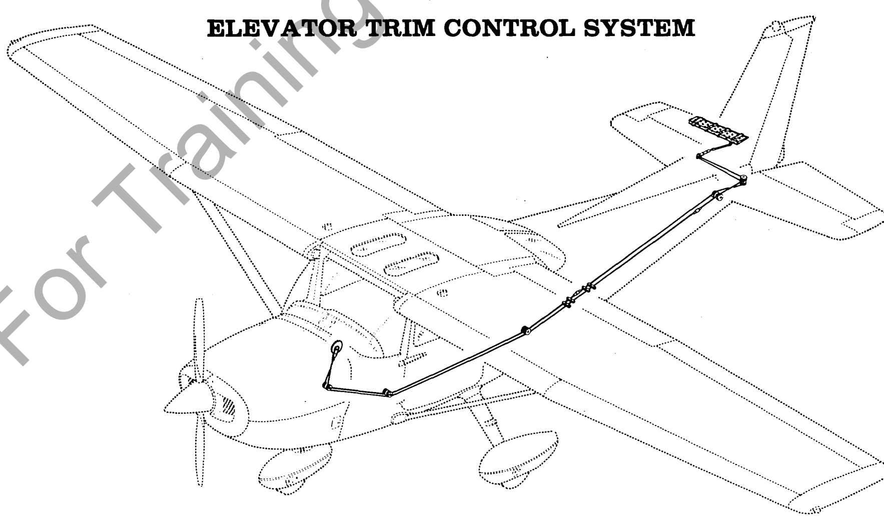


Figure 7-1. Flight Control and Trim Systems (Sheet 2 of 2)

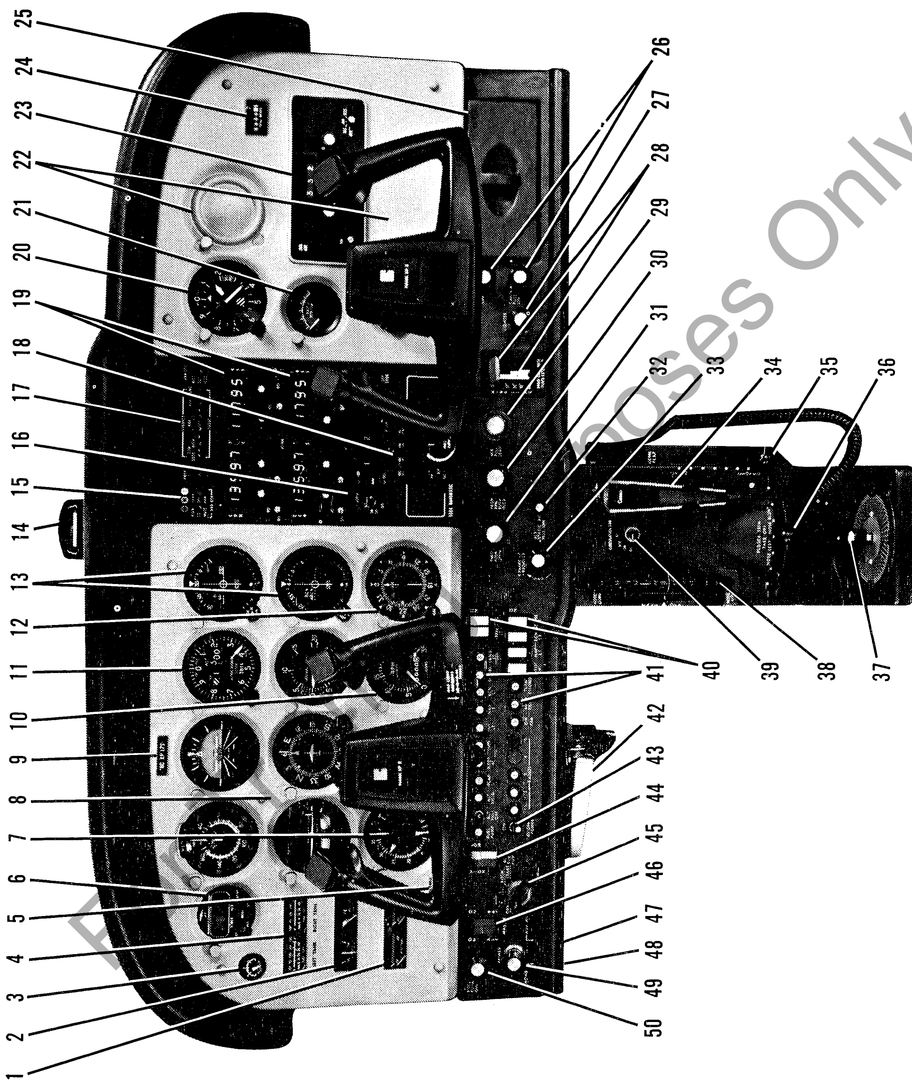


Figure 7-2. Instrument Panel (Sheet 1 of 2)

1. Cylinder Head Temperature and Oil Temperature Gages
2. Ammeter and Oil Pressure Gage
3. Suction Gage
4. Left Tank and Right Tank Fuel Quantity Indicators
5. Low-Voltage Warning Light
6. Digital Clock
7. Manifold Pressure/Fuel Flow Indicator
8. Flight Instrument Group
9. Airplane Registration Number
10. Tachometer
11. Encoding Altimeter
12. ADF Bearing Indicator
13. Course Deviation Indicators
14. Magnetic Compass
15. Marker Beacon Indicator Lights and Switches
16. Transponder
17. Audio Control Panel
18. Autopilot Control Unit
19. Radios
20. Secondary Altimeter
21. Economy Mixture Indicator
22. Additional Instrument and Radio Space
23. ADF Radio
24. Flight Hour Recorder
25. Map Compartment
26. Cabin Heat and Air Control Knobs
27. Cigar Lighter
28. Wing Flap Switch and Position Indicator
29. Mixture Control Knob
30. Propeller Control Knob
31. Throttle (With Friction Lock)
32. Static Pressure Alternate Source Valve
33. Instrument and Radio Dial Light Dimming Rheostats
34. Microphone
35. Cowl Flap Control Lever
36. Rudder Trim Control Lever
37. Fuel Selector Valve Handle
38. Elevator Trim Control Wheel
39. Circulation Fan Control
40. Electrical Switches
41. Circuit Breakers
42. Parking Brake Handle
43. Avionics Power Switch
44. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch
45. Ignition Switch
46. Master Switch
47. Auxiliary Mike Jack
48. Phone Jack
49. Primer
50. Fuel Shutoff Control Knob

Figure 7-2. Instrument Panel (Sheet 2 of 2)

stiffeners, center, left, and right wrap-around skin panels, and formed leading edge skins. The horizontal stabilizer also contains the elevator trim tab actuator. Construction of the elevator consists of formed leading edge skins, a forward spar, aft channel, ribs, torque tube and bellcrank, left upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins, and right upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins incorporating a trailing edge cut-out for the trim tab. The elevator trim tab consists of a spar, rib, and upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins. The leading edge of both left and right elevator tips incorporate extensions which contain balance weights.

FLIGHT CONTROLS

The airplane's flight control system (see figure 7-1) consists of conventional aileron, rudder, and elevator control surfaces. The control surfaces are manually operated through mechanical linkage using a control wheel for the ailerons and elevator, and rudder/brake pedals for the rudder.

Extensions are available for the rudder/brake pedals. They consist of a rudder pedal face, two spacers and two spring clips. To install an extension, place the clip on the bottom of the extension under the bottom of the rudder pedal and snap the top clip over the top of the rudder pedal. Check that the extension is firmly in place. To remove the extensions, reverse the above procedures.

TRIM SYSTEMS

Manually-operated rudder and elevator trim systems are provided. Rudder trimming is accomplished through a bungee connected to the rudder control system and a trim lever, mounted on the control pedestal. Rudder trimming is accomplished by lifting the trim lever up to clear a detent, then moving it either left or right to the desired trim position. Moving the trim lever to the right will trim the airplane nose-right; conversely, moving the lever to the left will trim the airplane nose-left. Elevator trimming is accomplished through the elevator trim tab by utilizing the vertically mounted trim control wheel. Forward rotation of the trim wheel will trim nose-down; conversely, aft rotation will trim nose-up.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

The instrument panel (see figure 7-2) is designed around the basic "T" configuration. The gyros are located immediately in front of the pilot, and arranged vertically over the control column. The airspeed indicator and altimeter are located to the left and right of the gyros, respectively. The remainder of the flight instruments are located around the basic "T" Engine instruments, fuel quantity indicators, an ammeter, and a low-voltage warning light are near the left edge of the panel. Avionics equipment is stacked approximately on the centerline of the panel, with the right side of the panel containing space for additional instruments and avionics equipment. A switch and control panel at the lower edge of the instrument panel contains the fuel shutoff valve control, primer, master and ignition switches, auxiliary fuel pump switch, circuit breakers, avionics power switch, and electrical switches on the left side, with the engine controls, light intensity controls, and static pressure alternate source valve in the center. The right side of the switch and control panel contains the wing flap switch lever and position indicator, cabin heat and air controls, cigar lighter, and map compartment. A control pedestal, installed below the switch and control panel, contains the elevator trim control wheel and indicator, microphone bracket, cowl flap control lever, and rudder trim control lever. A fuel selector valve handle is located at the base of the pedestal. A parking brake handle is mounted below the switch and control panel in front of the pilot.

For details concerning the instruments, switches, circuit breakers, and controls on this panel, refer in this section to the description of the systems to which these items are related.

GROUND CONTROL

Effective ground control while taxiing is accomplished through nose wheel steering by using the rudder pedals; left rudder pedal to steer left and right rudder pedal to steer right. When a rudder pedal is depressed, a spring-loaded steering bungee (which is connected to the nose gear and to the rudder bars) will turn the nose wheel through an arc of approximately 10° each side of center. By applying either left or right brake, the degree of turn may be increased up to 30° each side of center.

Moving the airplane by hand is most easily accomplished by attaching a tow bar to the nose gear strut. If a tow bar is not available, or pushing is required, use the wing struts as push points. Do not use the vertical or horizontal surfaces to move the airplane. If the airplane is to be towed by vehicle, never turn the nose wheel more than 30° either side of center or structural damage to the nose gear could result.

The minimum turning radius of the airplane, using differential braking and nose wheel steering during taxi, is approximately 27 feet 5 and 1/2 inches. To obtain a minimum radius turn during ground handling, the airplane may be rotated around either main landing gear by pressing down on a tailcone bulkhead just forward of the horizontal stabilizer to raise the nose wheel off the ground.

WING FLAP SYSTEM

The single-slot type wing flaps (see figure 7-3), are extended or retracted by positioning the wing flap switch lever on the right side of the switch and control panel to the desired flap deflection position. The switch lever is moved up or down in a slotted panel that provides mechanical stops at the 10° and 20° positions. For flap settings greater than 10°, move the switch lever to the right to clear the stop and position it as desired. A scale and pointer on the left side of the switch lever indicates flap travel in degrees. The wing flap system circuit is protected by a 10-amp circuit breaker, labeled FLAP, on the left side of the switch and control panel.

LANDING GEAR SYSTEM

The landing gear is of the tricycle type with a steerable nose wheel, two main wheels, and wheel fairings. Shock absorption is provided by the tubular spring-steel main landing gear struts and the air/oil nose gear

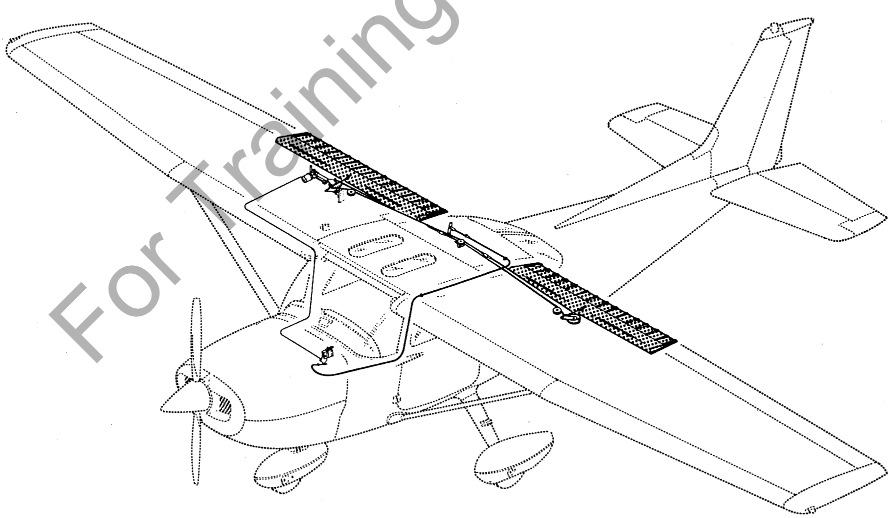


Figure 7-3. Wing Flap System

shock strut. Each main gear wheel is equipped with a hydraulically actuated single disc brake on the inboard side of each wheel, and an aerodynamic fairing over each brake.

BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT

The baggage compartment consists of two areas, one extending from behind the rear passengers' seat to the aft cabin bulkhead, and an additional area aft of the bulkhead. Access to both baggage areas is gained through a lockable baggage door on the left side of the airplane, or from within the airplane cabin. A baggage net with eight tie-down straps is provided for securing baggage and is attached by tying the straps to tie-down rings provided in the airplane. When loading the airplane, children should not be placed or permitted in the baggage compartment, unless a child's seat is installed, and any material that might be hazardous to the airplane or occupants should not be placed anywhere in the airplane. For baggage area and door dimensions, refer to Section 6.

SEATS

The seating arrangement consists of two individually adjustable four-way or six-way seats for the pilot and front seat passenger and a solid back or split-backed fixed seat for rear seat passengers. A child's seat (if installed) is located at the aft cabin bulkhead behind the rear seat.

The four-way seats may be moved forward or aft, and the angle of the seat backs is infinitely adjustable. To position the seat, lift the tubular handle below the center of the seat frame, slide the seat into position, release the handle and check that the seat is locked in place. The seat back angle is controlled by a cylinder lock release button which is spring-loaded to the locked position. The release button is located on the right side, below the forward corner of the seat cushion. To adjust the angle of the seat back, push up on the release button, position the seat back to the desired angle and release the button. When the seat is not occupied, the seat back will automatically fold forward whenever the release button is pushed up.

The six-way seats may be moved forward or aft, and are infinitely adjustable for height and seat back angle. To position the seat, lift the tubular handle under the center of the seat bottom, slide the seat into position, release the handle, and check that the seat is locked in place. Raise or lower the seat by rotating the large crank under the inboard corner of either seat. The seat back is adjusted by rotating the small crank under the outboard corner of either seat. The seat bottom angle will change as the seat back angle changes, providing proper support. The seat backs will also fold full forward.

The rear passengers' seat consists of a fixed one-piece seat bottom with either one-piece (adjustable to the vertical position or either of two reclining positions) or two-piece (individually, infinitely adjustable) seat backs. The one-piece back is adjusted by a lever located below the center of the seat frame. Two-piece seat backs are adjusted by cylinder lock release buttons recessed into skirts located below the seat frame at the outboard ends of the seat. To adjust the one-piece seat back, raise the lever, position the seat back to the desired angle, release the lever and check that the back is locked in place. To adjust a two-piece seat back, push up on the cylinder lock release button (which is spring-loaded to the locked position), recline the seat back to the desired position, and release the button. When the seats are not occupied, either type of seat back will automatically fold forward whenever the lever is raised or the cylinder lock release button is pushed up.

A child's seat may be installed behind the rear passengers' seat in the forward baggage compartment, and is held in place by two brackets mounted on the floorboard. When not occupied, the seat may be stowed by rotating the seat bottom up and aft until it contacts the aft cabin bulkhead.

Headrests are available for any of the seat configurations except the child's seat. To adjust the headrest, apply enough pressure to it to raise or lower it to the desired level. The headrest may be removed at anytime by raising it until it disengages from the top of the seat back.

SEAT BELTS AND SHOULDER HARNESSES

All seat positions are equipped with seat belts (see figure 7-4). The pilot's and front passenger's seats are also equipped with separate shoulder harnesses; shoulder harnesses are available for the rear seat positions. Integrated seat belt/shoulder harnesses with inertia reels can be furnished for the pilot's and front passenger's seat positions, if desired.

SEAT BELTS

The seat belts at all seat positions are attached to fittings on the floorboard. The buckle half of the seat belt is inboard of each seat and has a fixed length; the link half of the belt is outboard and is the adjustable part of the belt.

To use the seat belts for the front seats, position the seat as desired, and then lengthen the adjustable half of the belt as needed. Insert and lock the

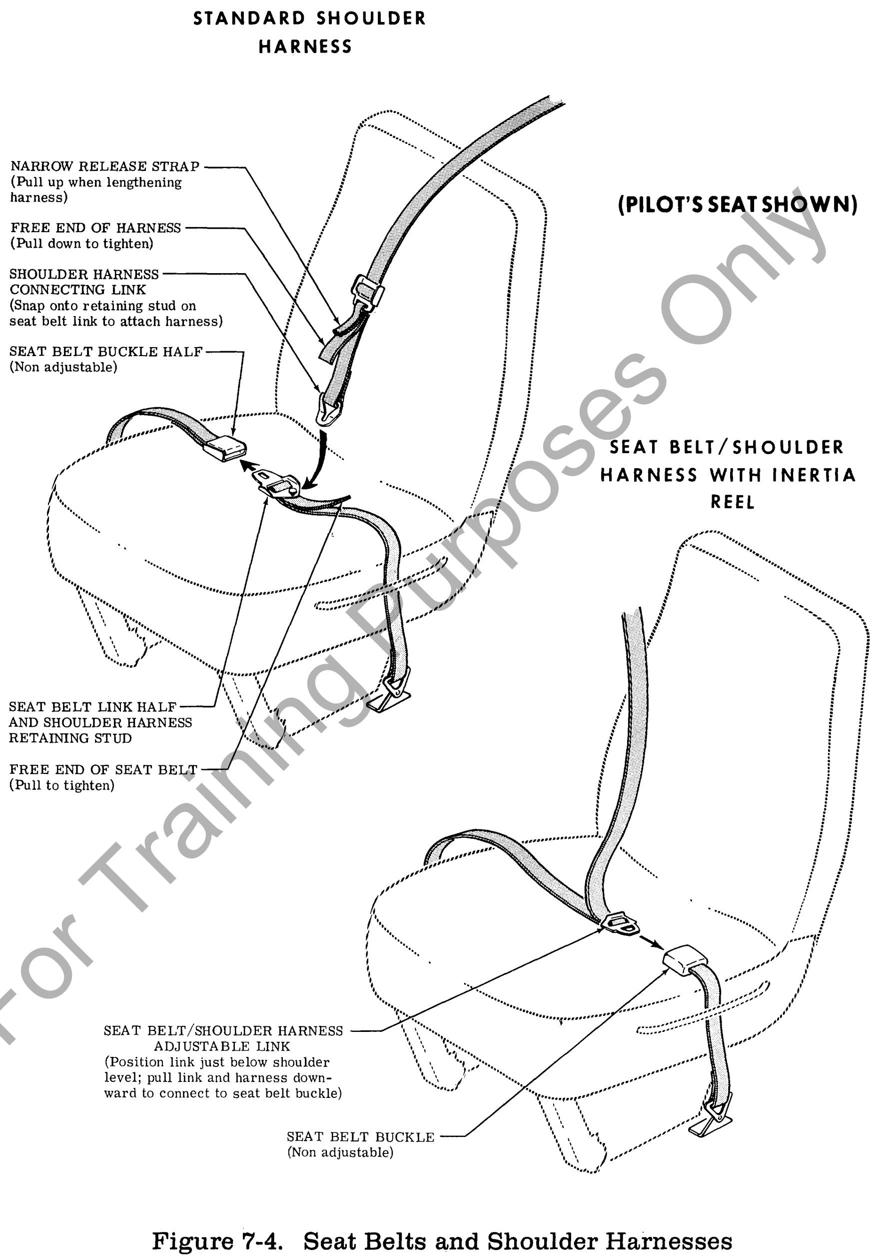


Figure 7-4. Seat Belts and Shoulder Harnesses

belt link into the buckle. Tighten the belt to a snug fit by pulling the free end of the belt. Seat belts for the rear seat, and the child's seat (if installed), are used in the same manner as the belts for the front seats. To release the seat belts, grasp the top of the buckle opposite the link and pull upward.

SHOULDER HARNESSES

Each front seat shoulder harness is attached to a rear doorpost above the window line and is stowed behind a stowage sheath above the cabin door. To stow the harness, fold it and place it behind the sheath. When rear seat shoulder harnesses are furnished, they are attached adjacent to the lower corners of the rear window. Each rear seat harness is stowed behind a stowage sheath above an aft side window. No harness is available for the child's seat.

To use a front or rear seat shoulder harness, fasten and adjust the seat belt first. Lengthen the harness as required by pulling on the connecting link on the end of the harness and the narrow release strap. Snap the connecting link firmly onto the retaining stud on the seat belt link half. Then adjust to length. A properly adjusted harness will permit the occupant to lean forward enough to sit completely erect, but prevent excessive forward movement and contact with objects during sudden deceleration. Also, the pilot will want the freedom to reach all controls easily.

Removing the shoulder harness is accomplished by pulling upward on the narrow release strap, and removing the harness connecting link from the stud on the seat belt link. In an emergency, the shoulder harness may be removed by releasing the seat belt first and allowing the harness, still attached to the link half of the seat belt, to drop to the side of the seat.

INTEGRATED SEAT BELT/SHOULDER HARNESSES WITH INERTIA REELS

Integrated seat belt/shoulder harnesses with inertia reels are available for the pilot and front seat passenger. The seat belt/shoulder harnesses extend from inertia reels located in the cabin ceiling to attach points inboard of the two front seats. A separate seat belt half and buckle is located outboard of the seats. Inertia reels allow complete freedom of body movement. However, in the event of a sudden deceleration, they will lock automatically to protect the occupants.

NOTE

> The inertia reels are located for maximum shoulder harness comfort and safe retention of the seat occupants. This location requires that the shoulder harnesses cross near the top so that the right hand inertia reel serves the pilot

and the left hand reel serves the front passenger. When fastening the harness, check to ensure the proper harness is being used.

To use the seat belt/shoulder harness, position the adjustable metal link on the harness just below shoulder level, pull the link and harness downward, and insert the link into the seat belt buckle. Adjust belt tension across the lap by pulling upward on the shoulder harness. Removal is accomplished by releasing the seat belt buckle, which will allow the inertia reel to pull the harness inboard of the seat.

ENTRANCE DOORS AND CABIN WINDOWS

Entry to, and exit from the airplane is accomplished through either of two entry doors, one on each side of the cabin at the front seat positions (refer to Section 6 for cabin and cabin door dimensions). The doors incorporate a recessed exterior door handle, a conventional interior door handle, a key-operated door lock (left door only), a door stop mechanism, and an openable window in the left door. An openable right door window is also available.

To open the doors from outside the airplane, utilize the recessed door handle near the aft edge of either door by grasping the forward edge of the handle and pulling outboard. To close or open the doors from inside the airplane, use the combination door handle and arm rest. The inside door handle has three positions and a placard at its base which reads OPEN, CLOSE, and LOCK. The handle is spring-loaded to the CLOSE (up) position. When the door has been pulled shut and latched, lock it by rotating the door handle forward to the LOCK position (flush with the arm rest). When the handle is rotated to the LOCK position, an over-center action will hold it in that position.

NOTE

Accidental opening of a cabin door in flight due to improper closing does not constitute a need to land the airplane. The best procedure is to set up the airplane in a trimmed condition at approximately 75 KIAS, momentarily shove the door outward slightly, and forcefully close and lock the door.

Exit from the airplane is accomplished by rotating the door handle from the LOCK position, past the CLOSE position, aft to the OPEN position and pushing the door open. To lock the airplane, lock the right cabin door with the inside handle, close the left cabin door, and using the ignition key, lock the door.

The left cabin door is equipped with an openable window which is held in the closed position by a detent equipped latch on the lower edge of the window frame. To open the window, rotate the latch upward. The window is equipped with a spring-loaded retaining arm which will help rotate the window outward, and hold it there. An openable window is also available for the right door, and functions in the same manner as the left window. If required, either window may be opened at any speed up to 163 KIAS. The cabin top windows (if installed), rear side windows, and rear windows are of the fixed type and cannot be opened.

CONTROL LOCKS

A control lock is provided to lock the aileron and elevator control surfaces to prevent damage to these systems by wind buffeting while the airplane is parked. The lock consists of a shaped steel rod with a red metal flag attached to it. The flag is labeled CONTROL LOCK, REMOVE BEFORE STARTING ENGINE. To install the control lock, align the hole in the top of the pilot's control wheel shaft with the hole in the top of the shaft collar on the instrument panel and insert the rod into the aligned holes. Installation of the lock will secure the ailerons in a neutral position and the elevators in a slightly trailing edge down position. Proper installation of the lock will place the red flag over the ignition switch. In areas where high or gusty winds occur, a control surface lock should be installed over the vertical stabilizer and rudder. The control lock and any other type of locking device should be removed prior to starting the engine.

ENGINE

The airplane is powered by a horizontally-opposed, six-cylinder, overhead-valve, air-cooled, fuel-injected engine with a wet sump oil system. The engine is a Continental Model IO-360-KB and is rated at 195 horsepower at 2600 RPM. Major accessories include a propeller governor on the front of the engine and dual magnetos, starter, gear-driven alternator, vacuum pump and full flow oil filter on the rear of the engine.

ENGINE CONTROLS

Engine manifold pressure is controlled by a throttle located on the switch and control panel. The throttle operates in a conventional manner; in the full forward position, the throttle is open, and in the full aft position, it is closed. A friction lock, which is a round knurled disk, is located at the base of the throttle and is operated by rotating the lock clockwise to increase friction or counterclockwise to decrease it.

The mixture control, mounted above the right corner of the control pedestal, is a red knob with raised points around the circumference and is equipped with a lock button in the end of the knob. The rich position is full forward, and full aft is the idle cut-off position. For small adjustments, the control may be moved forward by rotating the knob clockwise, and aft by rotating the knob counterclockwise. For rapid or large adjustments, the knob may be moved forward or aft by depressing the lock button in the end of the control, and then positioning the control as desired.

ENGINE INSTRUMENTS

Engine operation is monitored by the following instruments: oil pressure gage, oil temperature gage, cylinder head temperature gage, tachometer, and manifold pressure/fuel flow indicator. An economy mixture (EGT) indicator is also available.

The oil pressure gage, located on the left side of the instrument panel, is operated by oil pressure. A direct pressure oil line from the engine delivers oil at engine operating pressure to the oil pressure gage. Gage markings indicate that minimum idling pressure is 10 PSI (red line), the normal operating range is 30 to 60 PSI (green arc), and maximum pressure is 100 PSI (red line).

Oil temperature is indicated by a gage on the left side of the instrument panel. The gage is operated by an electrical-resistance type temperature sensor which receives power from the airplane electrical system. Oil temperature limitations are the normal operating range (green arc) which is 100°F (38°C) to 240°F (116°C), and the maximum (red line) which is 240°F (116°C).

The cylinder head temperature gage, located on the left side of the instrument panel, is operated by an electrical-resistance type temperature sensor on the engine which receives power from the airplane electrical system. Temperature limitations are the normal operating range (green arc) which is 200°F (93°C) to 460°F (238°C), and the maximum (red line) which is 460°F (238°C).

The engine-driven mechanical tachometer is located near the lower portion of the instrument panel to the right of the pilot's control wheel. The instrument is calibrated in increments of 100 RPM and indicates both engine and propeller speed. An hour meter below the center of the tachometer dial records elapsed engine time in hours and tenths. Instrument markings include a normal operating range (green arc) of 2200 to 2600 RPM, and a maximum (red line) of 2600 RPM.

The manifold pressure gage is the left half of a dual-indicating instrument and is located near the lower portion of the instrument panel to the left of the pilot's control wheel. The gage is direct reading and indicates induction air manifold pressure in inches of mercury. It has a normal operating range (green arc) of 15 to 25 inches of mercury.

The fuel flow indicator is the right half of a dual-indicating instrument and is located to the left of the pilot's control wheel. The indicator is a fuel pressure gage calibrated to indicate the approximate gallons per hour of fuel being metered to the engine. The normal operating range (green arc) is from 4.5 to 11.5 gallons per hour, the minimum (red line) is 3 PSI, and the maximum (red line) is 17 gallons per hour (17 PSI).

An economy mixture (EGT) indicator is available for the airplane and is located on the right side of the instrument panel. A thermocouple probe in the left exhaust collector measures exhaust gas temperature and transmits it to the indicator. The indicator serves as a visual aid to the pilot in adjusting cruise mixture. Exhaust gas temperature varies with fuel-to-air ratio, power, and RPM. However, the difference between the peak EGT and the EGT at the cruise mixture setting is essentially constant and this provides a useful leaning aid. The indicator is equipped with a manually positioned reference pointer.

NEW ENGINE BREAK-IN AND OPERATION

The engine underwent a run-in at the factory and is ready for the full range of use. It is, however, suggested that cruising be accomplished at 65% to 80% power until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized. This will ensure proper seating of the rings.

The airplane is delivered from the factory with corrosion preventive oil in the engine. If, during the first 25 hours, oil must be added, use only aviation grade straight mineral oil conforming to Specification No. MIL-L-6082.

ENGINE OIL SYSTEM

Oil for engine lubrication and propeller governor operation is supplied from a sump on the bottom of the engine. The capacity of the engine sump is eight quarts (one additional quart is contained in the engine oil filter). Oil is drawn from the sump through a filter screen on the end of a pick-up tube to the engine-driven oil pump. Oil from the pump passes through the full flow oil filter, a pressure relief valve, and a thermostatically controlled oil cooler. Oil from the cooler is then circulated to the oil galleries and propeller governor. The engine parts are then lubricated by oil from the galleries. After lubricating the engine, the oil returns to the sump by gravity. The oil filter adapter is equipped with a bypass valve which will cause lubricating oil to bypass the filter in the event the filter becomes plugged, or the oil temperature is extremely cold.

An oil filler cap and oil dipstick are located at the rear of the engine on the left side. The filler cap and dipstick are accessible through an access door in the engine cowling. The engine should not be operated on less than six quarts of oil. To minimize loss of oil through the breather, fill to seven quarts for normal flights of less than three hours. For extended flight, fill to eight quarts (dipstick indication only). For engine oil grade and specifications, refer to Section 8 of this handbook.

An oil quick-drain valve is available to replace the drain plug in the oil sump drain port and provides quicker, cleaner draining of the engine oil. To drain the oil with this valve, slip a hose over the end of the valve and push upward on the end of the valve until it snaps into the open position. Spring clips will hold the valve open. After draining, use a suitable tool to snap the valve into the extended (closed) position and remove the drain hose.

IGNITION-STARTER SYSTEM

Engine ignition is provided by two engine-driven magnetos, and two spark plugs in each cylinder. The right magneto fires the lower left and upper right spark plugs, and the left magneto fires the lower right and upper left spark plugs. Normal operation is conducted with both magnetos due to the more complete burning of the fuel-air mixture with dual ignition.

Ignition and starter operation is controlled by a rotary type switch located on the left switch and control panel. The switch is labeled clockwise, OFF, R, L, BOTH, and START. The engine should be operated on both magnetos (BOTH position) except for magneto checks. The R and L positions are for checking purposes and emergency use only. When the switch is rotated to the spring-loaded START position, (with the master switch in the ON position), the starter contactor is energized and the starter will crank the engine. When the switch is released, it will automatically return to the BOTH position.

AIR INDUCTION SYSTEM

Ram air entering the openings in the front of the engine cowling serves as induction air for the engine. The air is drawn through a cylindrical filter on top of the engine and into the induction airbox. The induction airbox contains an alternate air door which is spring-loaded to the closed position. If the induction air filter becomes blocked, suction created by the engine will open the alternate air door and draw unfiltered air from inside the cowling. An open alternate air door will result in negligible variations in manifold pressure and power. After passing through the airbox, induction air enters the fuel/air control unit, mounted to the induction airbox and is then delivered to the engine cylinders through the induction manifold.

EXHAUST SYSTEM

Exhaust gas from each cylinder passes through riser assemblies to a muffler and tailpipe. The muffler is constructed with a shroud around the outside which forms a heating chamber for cabin heater air.

FUEL INJECTION AND MANUAL PRIMING SYSTEM

The engine is equipped with a fuel injection system. The system is comprised of an engine-driven fuel pump, fuel/air control unit, fuel distributor manifold, fuel flow indicator and air-bleed type injector nozzles.

Fuel is delivered by the engine-driven fuel pump to the fuel/air control unit on the engine. The fuel/air control unit correctly proportions the fuel flow to the induction air flow. After passing through the control unit, induction air is delivered to the cylinders through intake manifold tubes, and metered fuel is delivered to a fuel distributor manifold. The fuel manifold, through spring tension on a diaphragm and valve, evenly distributes the fuel to an air-bleed type injector nozzle in the intake valve chamber of each cylinder. A pressure line is also attached to the fuel manifold, and is connected to the fuel flow indicator on the instrument panel.

The engine is equipped with a manual priming system for starting in extremely cold weather. The primer is a small pump labeled PRIMER, and is located on the left switch and control panel below the fuel shutoff valve knob. The primer draws fuel from the fuel strainer when the plunger is pulled out, and injects it into the intake manifolds when the plunger is pushed in. The plunger is equipped with a lock, and after being pushed full in, must be rotated either left or right until the knob cannot be pulled out.

COOLING SYSTEM

Ram air for engine cooling enters through two intake openings in the front of the engine cowling. The cooling air is directed around the cylinders and other areas of the engine by baffling, and is then exhausted through a cowl flap on the lower aft edge of the cowling. The cowl flap is mechanically operated from the cabin by means of a cowl flap lever on the right side of the control pedestal. The pedestal is labeled COWL FLAP, OPEN, CLOSED. During takeoff and high power operation, the cowl flap lever should be placed in the OPEN position for maximum cooling. This is accomplished by moving the lever to the left to clear a detent, then moving the lever up to the OPEN position. Anytime the lever is repositioned, it must first be moved to the left. While in cruise flight, the cowl flap should be adjusted to keep the cylinder head temperature at approximately two-thirds of the normal operating range (green arc). During extended let-downs, it may be necessary to completely close the cowl flap by pushing the cowl flap lever down to the CLOSED position.

A winterization kit is available for the airplane. Details of this kit are presented in Section 9, Supplements.

PROPELLER

The airplane has an all-metal, two-bladed, constant-speed, governor-regulated propeller. A setting introduced into the governor with the propeller control establishes the propeller speed, and thus the engine speed to be maintained. The governor then controls flow of engine oil, boosted to high pressure by the governing pump, to or from a piston in the propeller hub. Oil pressure acting on the piston twists the blades toward high pitch (low RPM). When oil pressure to the piston in the propeller hub is relieved, centrifugal force, assisted by an internal spring, twists the blades toward low pitch (high RPM).

A control knob on the lower center portion of the instrument panel is used to set the propeller and control engine RPM as desired for various flight conditions. The knob is labeled PROP RPM, PUSH INCR. When the control knob is pushed in, blade pitch will decrease, giving a higher RPM. When the control knob is pulled out, the blade pitch increases, thereby decreasing RPM. The propeller control knob is equipped with a vernier feature which allows slow or fine RPM adjustments by rotating the knob clockwise to increase RPM, and counterclockwise to decrease it. To make rapid or large adjustments, depress the button on the end of the control knob and reposition the control as desired.

FUEL SYSTEM

The airplane may be equipped with either a standard or long range fuel system (see figure 7-5). The standard system has two vented fuel tanks (one in each wing); the long range fuel system has two vented integral fuel tanks (one in each wing). Both systems include a fuel selector valve, fuel reservoir tank, fuel shutoff valve, auxiliary fuel pump, fuel strainer, manual primer, engine-driven fuel pump and mixture unit, fuel/air control unit, fuel manifold, and fuel injection nozzles. Refer to figure 7-6 for fuel quantity data for both systems.

Fuel flows by gravity from the two wing tanks to a three-position selector valve, labeled BOTH, RIGHT, and LEFT. With the selector valve in either the BOTH, RIGHT, or LEFT position, fuel flows through a fuel reservoir tank, fuel shutoff valve, a bypass in the auxiliary fuel pump (when it is not in operation), and the fuel strainer to the engine-driven fuel pump. The engine-driven fuel pump delivers the fuel to the fuel/air control unit where it is metered and routed to a fuel manifold which distributes it to each cylinder. Vapor and excess fuel from the engine-driven fuel pump and mixture unit are returned to the fuel reservoir tank by a check valve equipped vapor return line, and from the reservoir tank to the wing tanks.

Fuel system venting is essential to system operation. Blockage of the system will result in decreasing fuel flow and eventual engine stoppage. Venting is accomplished by an interconnecting line from the right fuel tank to the left tank. The left fuel tank is vented overboard through a vent line, equipped with a check valve, which protrudes from the bottom surface of the left wing near the wing strut. The right fuel tank filler cap is also vented.

Fuel quantity is measured by two float-type fuel quantity transmitters (one in each fuel tank) and indicated by two electrically-operated fuel quantity indicators on the left side of the instrument panel. The fuel quantity indicators are calibrated in gallons (lower scale) and pounds (upper scale). An empty tank is indicated by a red line and the letter E. When an indicator shows an empty tank, approximately 1.5 gallons remain in a standard tank (approximately 1 gallon remains in a long range tank) as unusable fuel. The indicators cannot be relied upon for accurate readings during skids, slips, or unusual flight attitudes. If both indicator pointers should rapidly move to a zero reading, check the cylinder head temperature and oil temperature gages for operation. If these gages show no indication, an electrical malfunction has occurred.

The fuel selector valve should be in the BOTH position for takeoff, climb, landing, and maneuvers that involve prolonged slips or skids.

NOTE

When the fuel selector valve handle is in the BOTH position in cruising flight, unequal fuel flow from each tank may occur if the wings are not maintained exactly level. Resulting wing heaviness can be alleviated gradually by turning the selector valve handle to the tank in the "heavy" wing.

If the airplane is equipped with the long range fuel system, it may be serviced to a reduced fuel capacity to permit heavier cabin loadings by filling each integral fuel tank to the bottom of the standpipe (scupper)

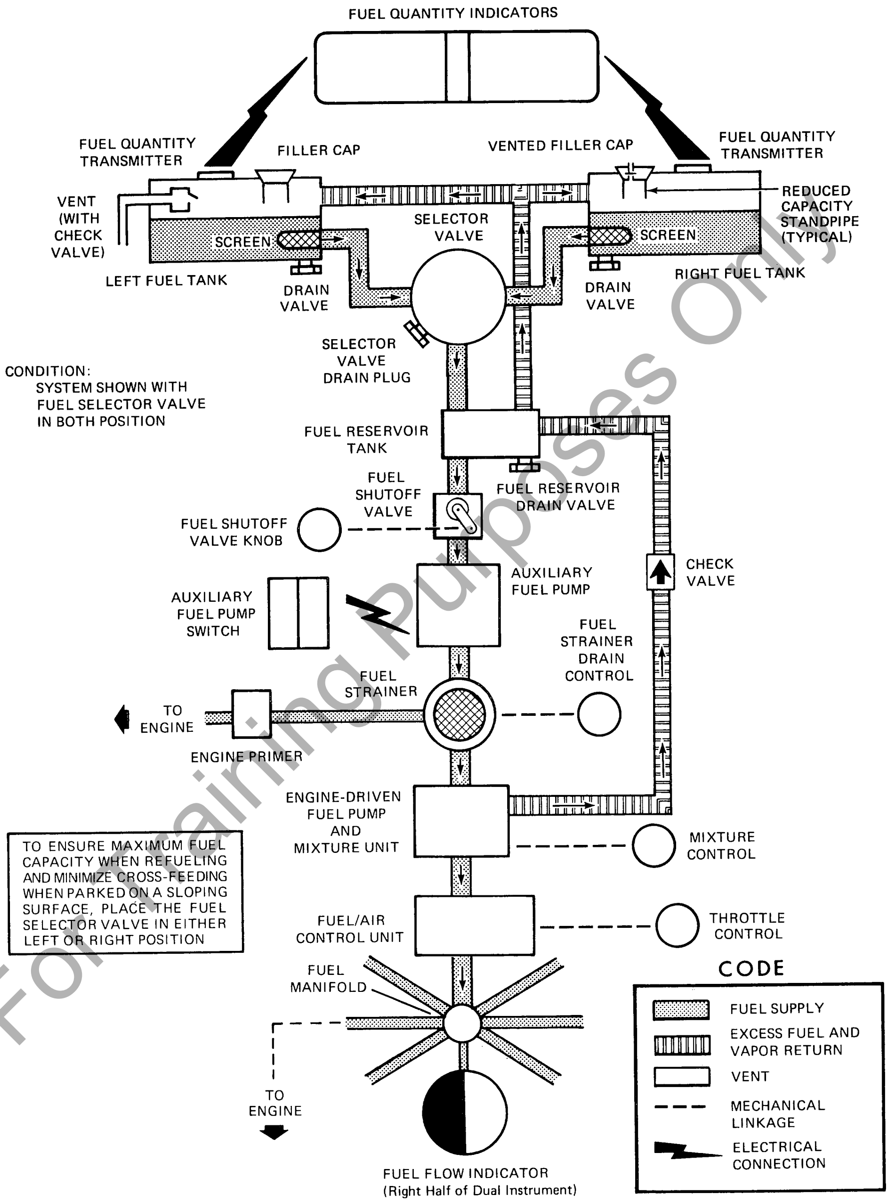


Figure 7-5. Fuel System (Standard and Long Range)

FUEL QUANTITY DATA (U. S. GALLONS)			
TANKS	TOTAL USABLE FUEL ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS	TOTAL UNUSABLE FUEL	TOTAL FUEL VOLUME
STANDARD (26 Gal. Each)	49	3	52
LONG RANGE (34 Gal. Each)	66	2	68
REDUCED FUEL (26 Gal. Each)	50	2	52

Figure 7-6. Fuel Quantity Data

located in the filler collar. Each fuel tank contains 26 gallons (25 gallons usable in all flight conditions) when filled to this level.

NOTE

It is not practical to measure the time required to consume all of the fuel in one tank, and, after switching to the opposite tank, expect an equal duration from the remaining fuel. The airspace in both fuel tanks is interconnected by a vent line and, therefore, some sloshing of fuel between tanks can be expected when the tanks are nearly full and the wings are not level.

The auxiliary fuel pump switch, labeled AUX FUEL PUMP, is located on the left side of the switch and control panel and is a red and yellow split-rocker switch. The red left half, labeled HIGH, is spring-loaded in the off (down) position and the yellow right half is labeled LOW. When the red half is placed in the HIGH position, an interlock within the switch will automatically trip the yellow half of the switch to the LOW position. When the red half of the switch is released, the yellow half will remain in the LOW position until manually returned to the off position. The HIGH position is used primarily for engine starting and extreme vapor purging, and is also used in the event of an engine-driven fuel pump failure during takeoff or high power operations.

NOTE

If the auxiliary fuel pump switch is accidentally placed in the HIGH or LOW position with the master switch on, mixture rich, and the engine stopped, the intake manifolds will be flooded.

The LOW position of the switch is used for minor vapor purging and continued engine operation in the event of an engine-driven fuel pump failure. When the switch is placed in the LOW position, the auxiliary fuel pump will operate at one of two flow rates depending on the position of the throttle. With the throttle in a cruise flight position, the pump will provide a high enough fuel flow to maintain flight in the event of an engine-driven fuel pump failure. As the throttle is moved toward the closed position (during letdown, landing, or taxiing), fuel flow provided by the pump is automatically reduced by a throttle-actuated switch, preventing an excessively rich mixture during periods of reduced engine power.

NOTE

If the engine-driven fuel pump is functioning and the auxiliary fuel pump switch is placed in the LOW position, an excessively rich fuel/air ratio is produced unless the mixture is leaned. Therefore, this switch should be turned off during takeoff.

If it is desired to completely exhaust a fuel tank quantity in flight, the auxiliary fuel pump will be needed to assist in restarting the engine when fuel exhaustion occurs. Therefore, it is recommended that proper operation of the auxiliary fuel pump be verified prior to running a fuel tank dry by placing the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position momentarily and checking for a slight rise in fuel flow indication.

To ensure a prompt engine restart in flight after running a fuel tank dry, immediately switch to the tank containing fuel at the first indication of fuel pressure fluctuation and/or power loss. Then place the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position momentarily (3 to 5 seconds) with the throttle at least 1/2 open. Excessive use of the HIGH position at high altitude and full rich mixture can cause flooding of the engine as indicated by a short (1 to 2 seconds) period of power followed by a loss of power. This can later be detected by a fuel flow indication accompanied by a lack of power. If flooding does occur, turn off the auxiliary fuel pump switch, and normal propeller windmilling should start the engine in 1 to 2 seconds.

If the propeller should stop (possible at very low airspeeds) before the tank containing fuel is selected, place the auxiliary fuel pump switch in the HIGH position and advance the throttle promptly until the fuel flow indicator registers approximately 1/2 way into the green arc for 1 to 2 seconds duration. Then retard the throttle, turn off the auxiliary fuel pump switch, and use the starter to turn the engine over until a start is obtained.

The fuel system is equipped with drain valves to provide a means for the examination of fuel in the system for contamination and grade. The system should be examined before the first flight of every day and after each refueling, by using the sampler cup provided to drain fuel from the wing tank sumps and fuel reservoir tank, and by utilizing the fuel strainer drain under an access door on the left side of the engine cowling. The fuel tanks should be filled after each flight to prevent condensation.

BRAKE SYSTEM

The airplane has a single-disc, hydraulically-actuated brake on each main landing gear wheel. Each brake is connected, by a hydraulic line, to a master cylinder attached to each of the pilot's rudder pedals. The brakes are operated by applying pressure to the top of either the left (pilot's) or right (copilot's) set of rudder pedals, which are interconnected. When the airplane is parked, both main wheel brakes may be set by utilizing the parking brake which is operated by a handle under the left side of the instrument panel. To apply the parking brake, set the brakes with the rudder pedals, pull the handle aft, and rotate it 90° down.

For maximum brake life, keep the brake system properly maintained, and minimize brake usage during taxi operations and landings.

Some of the symptoms of impending brake failure are: gradual decrease in braking action after brake application, noisy or dragging brakes, soft or spongy pedals, and excessive travel and weak braking action. If any of these symptoms appear, the brake system is in need of immediate attention. If, during taxi or landing roll, braking action decreases, let up on the pedals and then re-apply the brakes with heavy pressure. If the brakes become spongy or pedal travel increases, pumping the pedals should build braking pressure. If one brake becomes weak or fails, use the other brake sparingly while using opposite rudder, as required, to offset the good brake.

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

The airplane is equipped with a 28-volt, direct-current electrical system (see figure 7-7). The system is powered by a gear-driven, 38-amp alternator and a 24-volt battery (a heavy duty battery is available), located on the aft side of the rear cabin bulkhead. Power is supplied to most general electrical and all avionics circuits through the primary bus bar and the avionics bus bar, which are interconnected by an avionics power switch.

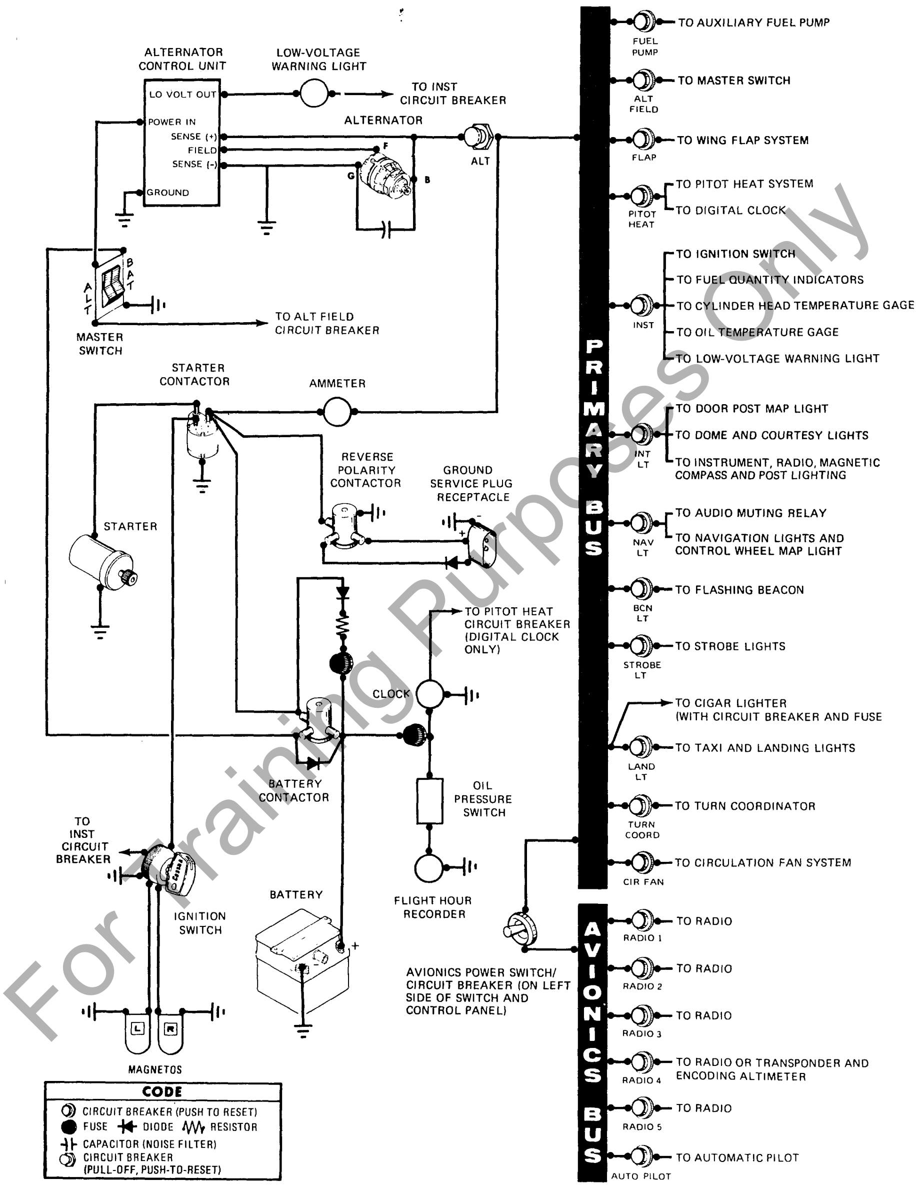


Figure 7-7. Electrical System

The primary bus is on anytime the master switch is turned on, and is not affected by starter or external power usage. Both bus bars are on anytime the master and avionics power switches are turned on.

CAUTION

Prior to turning the master switch on or off, starting the engine, or applying an external power source, the avionics power switch, labeled AVIONICS POWER, should be turned off to prevent any harmful transient voltage from damaging the avionics equipment.

MASTER SWITCH

The master switch is a split-rocker type switch labeled MASTER, and is ON in the up position and off in the down position. The right half of the switch, labeled BAT, controls all electrical power to the airplane. The left half, labeled ALT, controls the alternator.

Normally, both sides of the master switch should be used simultaneously; however, the BAT side of the switch could be turned ON separately to check equipment while on the ground. To check or use avionics equipment or radios while on the ground, the avionics power switch must be turned on. The ALT side of the switch, when placed in the off position, removes the alternator from the electrical system. With this switch in the off position, the entire electrical load is placed on the battery. Continued operation with the alternator switch in the off position will reduce battery power low enough to open the battery contactor, remove power from the alternator field, and prevent alternator restart.

AVIONICS POWER SWITCH

Electrical power from the airplane primary bus to the avionics bus (see figure 7-7) is controlled by a toggle switch/circuit breaker labeled AVIONICS POWER. The switch is located on the left side of the switch and control panel and is ON in the up position and off in the down position. With the switch in the off position, no electrical power will be applied to the avionics equipment, regardless of the position of the master switch or the individual equipment switches. The avionics power switch also functions as a circuit breaker. If an electrical malfunction should occur and cause the circuit breaker to open, electrical power to the avionics equipment will be interrupted and the switch will automatically move to the off position. If this occurs, allow the circuit breaker to cool approximately two minutes before placing the switch in the ON position again. If the circuit breaker opens again, do not reset it. The avionics power switch should be placed in the off position prior to turning the master switch ON or off, starting the engine, or applying an external power source, and may be utilized in place of the individual avionics equipment switches.

AMMETER

The ammeter, located adjacent to the oil pressure gage, indicates the amount of current, in amperes, from the alternator to the battery or from the battery to the airplane electrical system. When the engine is operating and the master switch is turned on, the ammeter indicates the charging rate applied to the battery. In the event the alternator is not functioning or the electrical load exceeds the output of the alternator, the ammeter indicates the battery discharge rate.

ALTERNATOR CONTROL UNIT AND LOW-VOLTAGE WARNING LIGHT

The airplane is equipped with a combination alternator regulator high-low voltage control unit mounted on the engine side of the firewall and a red warning light, labeled LOW VOLTAGE, on the left side of the instrument panel below the oil temperature gage.

In the event an over-voltage condition occurs, the alternator control unit automatically removes alternator field current which shuts down the alternator. The battery will then supply system current as shown by a discharge rate on the ammeter. Under these conditions, depending on electrical system load, the low-voltage warning light will illuminate when system voltage drops below normal. The alternator control unit may be reset by turning the master switch off and back on again. If the warning light does not illuminate, normal alternator charging has resumed; however, if the light does illuminate again, a malfunction has occurred, and the flight should be terminated as soon as practicable.

NOTE

> Illumination of the low-voltage light and ammeter discharge indications may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system, such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the light will go out at higher RPM. The master switch need not be recycled since an over-voltage condition has not occurred to de-activate the alternator system.

The warning light may be tested by turning on the landing lights and momentarily turning off the ALT portion of the master switch while leaving the BAT portion turned on.

CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND FUSES

Most of the electrical circuits in the airplane are protected by "push-to-reset" type circuit breakers mounted on the left side of the switch and control panel. However, alternator output is protected by a "pull-off" type circuit breaker. In addition to the individual circuit breakers, a toggle switch/circuit breaker, labeled AVIONICS POWER, on the left side of the switch and control panel also protects the avionics systems. The cigar lighter is protected by a manually-reset type circuit breaker on the back of the lighter, and a fuse behind the instrument panel. The control wheel map light (if installed) is protected by the NAV LT circuit breaker and a fuse behind the instrument panel. Electrical circuits which are not protected by circuit breakers are the battery contactor closing (external power) circuit, clock circuit, and flight hour recorder circuit. These circuits are protected by fuses mounted adjacent to the battery.

GROUND SERVICE PLUG RECEPTACLE

A ground service plug receptacle may be installed to permit the use of an external power source for cold weather starting and during lengthy maintenance work on the electrical and electronic equipment. Details of the ground service plug receptacle are presented in Section 9, Supplements.

LIGHTING SYSTEMS

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

Conventional navigation lights are located on the wing tips and top of the rudder. Dual landing/taxi lights are installed in the cowl nose cap. Additional lighting is available and includes a flashing beacon mounted on top of the vertical fin, a strobe light on each wing tip, and a courtesy light recessed into the lower surface of each wing slightly outboard of the cabin doors. Details of the strobe light system are presented in Section 9, Supplements. The courtesy lights are operated by the DOME LIGHTS switch located on the overhead console; push the switch to the right to turn the lights on. The remaining exterior lights are operated by rocker switches on the left switch and control panel; push the rocker up to the ON position.

The flashing beacon should not be used when flying through clouds or overcast; the flashing light reflected from water droplets or particles in the atmosphere, particularly at night, can produce vertigo and loss of orientation.

INTERIOR LIGHTING

Instrument panel and switch and control panel lighting is provided by flood lighting, integral lighting, and post lighting (if installed). Lighting intensity is controlled by a dual light dimming rheostat equipped with an outer knob labeled PANEL LT, and an inner knob labeled RADIO LT, located below the throttle. A slide-type switch (if installed) on the overhead console, labeled PANEL LIGHTS, is used to select flood lighting in the FLOOD position, post lighting in the POST position, or a combination of post and flood lighting in the BOTH position.

Instrument panel and switch and control panel flood lighting consists of a single red flood light in the forward edge of the overhead console. To use flood lighting, move the slide switch in the overhead console, labeled PANEL LIGHTS, to the FLOOD position and rotate the outer knob on the light dimming rheostat, labeled PANEL LT, clockwise to the desired light intensity.

Post lights (if installed) are mounted at the edge of each instrument and provide direct lighting. To use post lighting, move the slide switch in the overhead console, labeled PANEL LIGHTS, to the POST position and rotate the outer knob on the light dimming rheostat, labeled PANEL LT, clockwise to obtain the desired light intensity. When the PANEL LIGHTS switch is placed in the BOTH position, the flood lights and post lights will operate simultaneously.

The radio equipment, magnetic compass and engine instrument cluster (when post lights are installed) have integral lighting and operate independently of post or flood lighting. The intensity of this lighting is controlled by the inner knob on the light dimming rheostat labeled RADIO LT; rotate the knob clockwise to obtain the desired light intensity. However, for daylight operation, the compass and engine instrument lights may be turned off while still maintaining maximum light intensity for digital readouts in the radio equipment. This is accomplished by rotating the RADIO LT knob full counterclockwise. Check that the flood lights/post lights are turned off for daylight operation by rotating the PANEL LT knob full counterclockwise.

A cabin dome light, in the aft part of the overhead console, is operated by a switch near the light. To turn the light on, move the switch to the right.

A control wheel map light is available and is mounted on the bottom of the pilot's control wheel. The light illuminates the lower portion of the cabin just forward of the pilot and is helpful when checking maps and other flight data during night operations. To operate the light, first turn on the NAV LT switch; then adjust the map light's intensity with the knurled disk type rheostat control located at the bottom of the control wheel.

A doorpost map light is located on the left forward doorpost. It contains both red and white bulbs and may be positioned to illuminate any area desired by the pilot. The light is controlled by a switch, below the light, which is labeled RED, OFF, and WHITE. Placing the switch in the top position will provide a red light. In the bottom position, standard white lighting is provided. In the center position, the map light is turned off. Red light intensity is controlled by the outer knob on the light dimming rheostat labeled PANEL LT.

The most probable cause of a light failure is a burned out bulb; however, in the event any of the lighting systems fail to illuminate when turned on, check the appropriate circuit breaker. If the circuit breaker has opened (white button popped out), and there is no obvious indication of a short circuit (smoke or odor), turn off the light switch of the affected lights, reset the breaker, and turn the switch on again. If the breaker opens again, do not reset it.

CABIN HEATING, VENTILATING AND DEFROSTING SYSTEM

The temperature and volume of airflow into the cabin can be regulated by manipulation of the push-pull CABIN HT and CABIN AIR control knobs (see figure 7-8).

For cabin ventilation, pull the CABIN AIR knob out. To raise the air temperature, pull the CABIN HT knob out approximately 1/4 to 1/2 inch for a small amount of cabin heat. Additional heat is available by pulling the knob out farther; maximum heat is available with the CABIN HT knob pulled out and the CABIN AIR knob pushed full in. When no heat is desired in the cabin, the CABIN HT knob is pushed full in.

Front cabin heat and ventilating air is supplied by outlet holes spaced across a cabin manifold just forward of the pilot's and copilot's feet. Rear cabin heat and air is supplied by two ducts from the manifold, one extending down each side of the cabin to an outlet at the front doorpost at floor level. Windshield defrost air is supplied by two ducts leading from the cabin manifold to outlets near the lower edge of the windshield. Two knobs control sliding valves in either defroster outlet to permit regulation of defroster airflow.

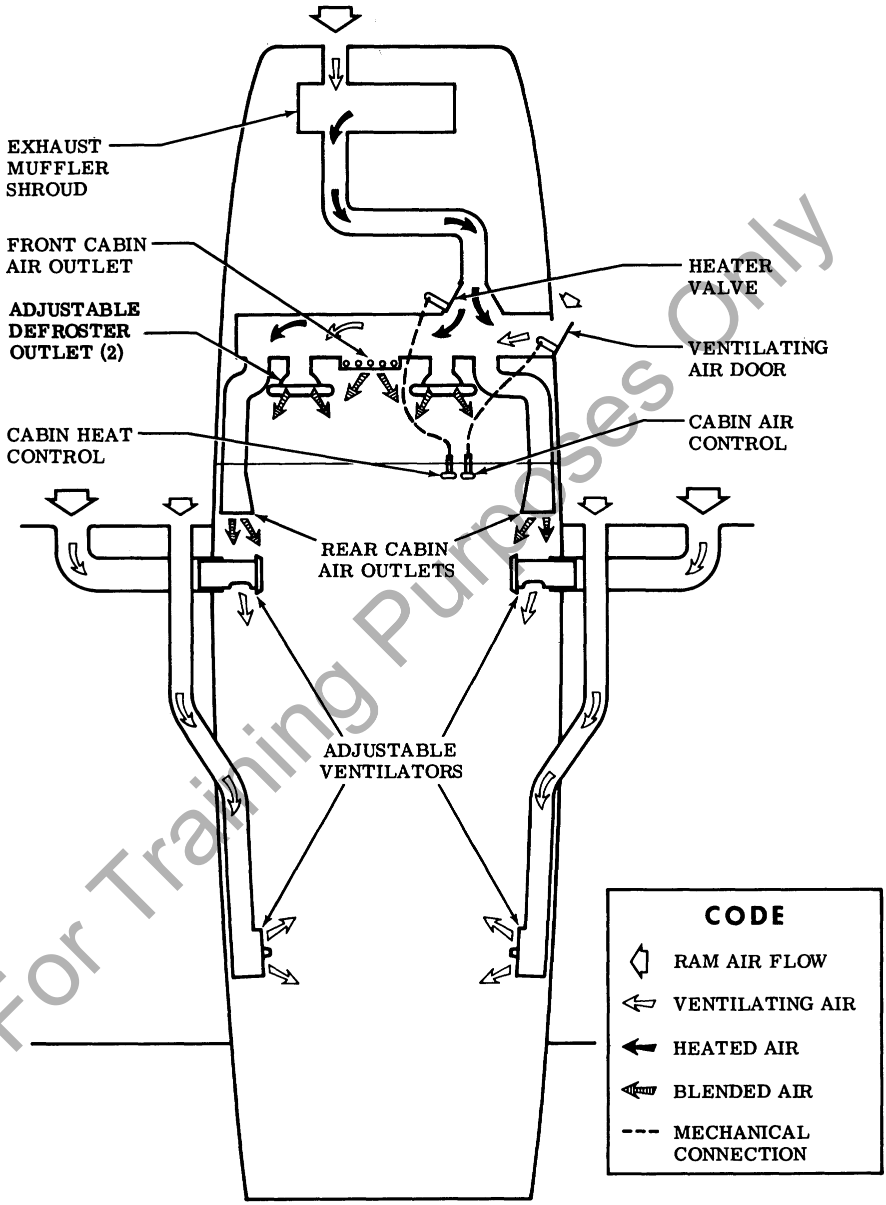


Figure 7-8. Cabin Heating, Ventilating, and Defrosting System

Separate adjustable ventilators supply additional air; one near each upper corner of the windshield supplies air for the pilot and copilot, and two ventilators are available for the rear cabin area to supply air to the rear seat passengers.

PITOT-STATIC SYSTEM AND INSTRUMENTS

The pitot-static system supplies ram air pressure to the airspeed indicator and static pressure to the airspeed indicator, vertical speed indicator and altimeter. The system is composed of either an unheated or heated pitot tube mounted on the lower surface of the left wing, two external static ports on the lower left and right sides of the forward fuselage, and the associated plumbing necessary to connect the instruments to the sources.

The heated pitot system (if installed) consists of a heating element in the pitot tube, a rocker switch labeled PITOT HT, a 5-amp circuit breaker, and associated wiring. The switch and circuit breaker are located on the left side of the switch and control panel. When the pitot heat switch is turned on, the element in the pitot tube is heated electrically to maintain proper operation in possible icing conditions. Pitot heat should be used only as required.

A static pressure alternate source valve may be installed on the switch and control panel below the throttle, and can be used if the external static source is malfunctioning. This valve supplies static pressure from inside the cabin instead of the external static ports.

If erroneous instrument readings are suspected due to water or ice in the pressure line going to the standard external static pressure source, the alternate static source valve should be pulled on.

Pressures within the cabin will vary with heater/vents opened or closed. Refer to Sections 3 and 5 for the effect of varying cabin pressures on airspeed and altimeter readings.

AIRSPEED INDICATOR

The airspeed indicator is calibrated in knots and miles per hour. Limitation and range markings (in KIAS) include the white arc (38 to 85 knots), green arc (48 to 129 knots), yellow arc (129 to 163 knots), and a red line (163 knots).

If a true airspeed indicator is installed, it is equipped with a rotatable ring which works in conjunction with the airspeed indicator dial in a manner similar to the operation of a flight computer. To operate the indicator, first rotate the ring until **pressure** altitude is aligned with outside air temperature in degrees Fahrenheit. Pressure altitude should not be confused with indicated altitude. To obtain pressure altitude, momentarily set the barometric scale on the altimeter to 29.92 and read the pressure altitude on the altimeter. Be sure to return the altimeter barometric scale to the original barometric setting after pressure altitude has been obtained. Having set the ring to correct for altitude and temperature, read the true airspeed shown on the rotatable ring by the indicator pointer. For best accuracy, the indicated airspeed should be corrected to calibrated airspeed by referring to the Airspeed Calibration chart in Section 5. Knowing the calibrated airspeed, read true airspeed on the ring opposite the calibrated airspeed.

VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR

The vertical speed indicator depicts airplane rate of climb or descent in feet per minute. The pointer is actuated by atmospheric pressure changes resulting from changes of altitude as supplied by the static source.

ALTIMETER

Airplane altitude is depicted by a barometric type altimeter. A knob near the lower left portion of the indicator provides adjustment of the instrument's barometric scale to the current altimeter setting.

VACUUM SYSTEM AND INSTRUMENTS

An engine-driven vacuum system (see figure 7-9) provides the suction necessary to operate the attitude indicator and directional indicator. The system consists of a vacuum pump mounted on the engine, a vacuum relief valve and vacuum system air filter on the aft side of the firewall below the instrument panel, and instruments (including a suction gage) on the left side of the instrument panel.

ATTITUDE INDICATOR

The attitude indicator gives a visual indication of flight attitude. Bank attitude is presented by a pointer at the top of the indicator relative to the bank scale which has index marks at 10°, 20°, 30°, 60°, and 90° either side of the center mark. Pitch and roll attitudes are presented by a miniature airplane superimposed over a symbolic horizon area divided into two sections by a white horizon bar. The upper "blue sky" area and the lower "ground" area have arbitrary pitch reference lines useful for pitch attitude control. A knob at the bottom of the instrument is provided for in-flight

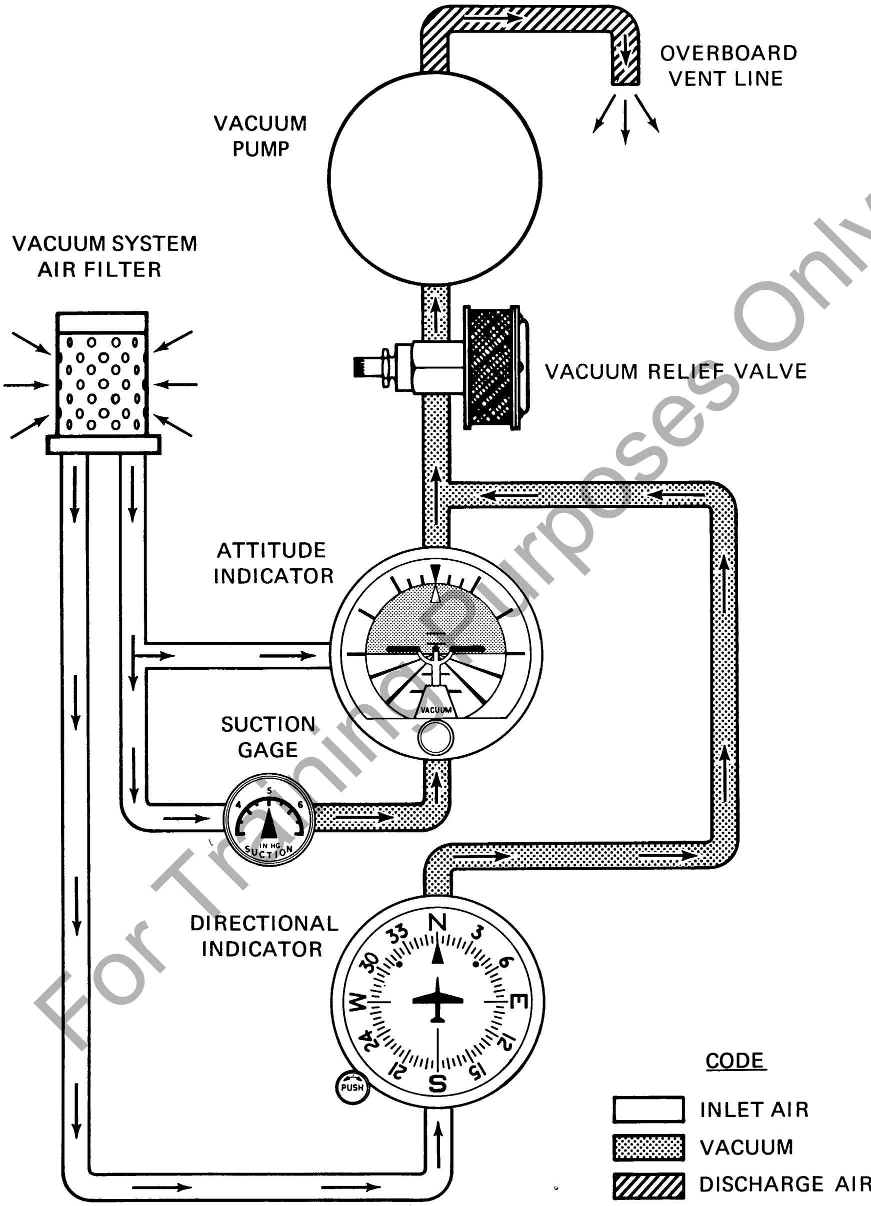


Figure 7-9. Vacuum System

adjustment of the miniature airplane to the horizon bar for a more accurate flight attitude indication.

DIRECTIONAL INDICATOR

A directional indicator displays airplane heading on a compass card in relation to a fixed simulated airplane image and index. The indicator will precess slightly over a period of time. Therefore, the compass card should be set in accordance with the magnetic compass just prior to takeoff, and occasionally re-adjusted on extended flights. A knob on the lower left edge of the instrument is used to adjust the compass card to correct for precession.

SUCTION GAGE

The suction gage, located on the left side of the instrument panel above the fuel gages, is calibrated in inches of mercury and indicates suction available for operation of the attitude and directional indicators. The desired suction range is 4.5 to 5.4 inches of mercury. A suction reading below this range may indicate a system malfunction or improper adjustment, and in this case, the indicators should not be considered reliable.

STALL WARNING SYSTEM

The airplane is equipped with a pneumatic-type stall warning system consisting of an inlet in the leading edge of the left wing, an air-operated horn near the upper left corner of the windshield, and associated plumbing. As the airplane approaches a stall, the low pressure on the upper surface of the wings moves forward around the leading edge of the wings. This low pressure creates a differential pressure in the stall warning system which draws air through the warning horn, resulting in an audible warning at 5 to 10 knots above stall in all flight conditions.

The stall warning system should be checked during the preflight inspection by placing a clean handkerchief over the vent opening and applying suction. A sound from the warning horn will confirm that the system is operative.

AVIONICS SUPPORT EQUIPMENT

If the airplane is equipped with avionics, various avionics support equipment may also be installed. Equipment available includes two types of audio control panels, microphone-headset installations and control surface static dischargers. The following paragraphs discuss these items. Description and operation of radio equipment is covered in Section 9 of this handbook.

AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

Two types of audio control panels (see figure 7-10) are available for this airplane, depending upon how many transmitters are included. The operational features of both audio control panels are similar and are discussed in the following paragraphs.

TRANSMITTER SELECTOR SWITCH

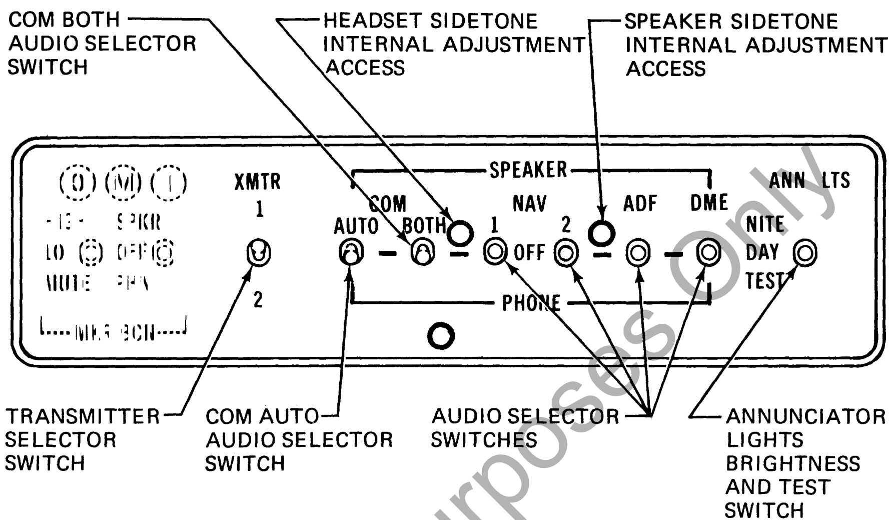
When the avionics package includes a maximum of two transmitters, a two-position toggle-type switch, labeled XMTR, is provided to switch the microphone to the transmitter the pilot desires to use. If the airplane avionics package includes a third transmitter, the transmitter selector switch is a three-position rotary-type switch, labeled XMTR SEL. The numbers 1, 2, or 1, 2 and 3 adjacent to the selector switches correspond to the first, second and third (from top to bottom) transmitters in the avionics stack. To select a transmitter, place the transmitter selector switch in the position number corresponding to the desired transmitter.

The action of selecting a particular transmitter using the transmitter selector switch simultaneously selects the audio amplifier associated with that transmitter to provide speaker audio. For example, if the number one transmitter is selected, the audio amplifier in the number one NAV/COM is also selected and is used for ALL speaker audio. In the event the audio amplifier in use fails, as evidenced by loss of all speaker audio, selecting an alternate transmitter will reestablish speaker audio using the alternate transmitter audio amplifier. Headset audio is not affected by audio amplifier operation.

AUDIO SELECTOR SWITCHES

Both audio control panels (see figure 7-10) incorporate three-position toggle-type audio selector switches for individual control of the audio from systems installed in the airplane. These switches allow receiver audio to be directed to the airplane speaker or to a headset, and heard singly or in combination with other receivers. To hear a particular receiver on the airplane speaker, place that receiver's audio selector switch in the up (SPEAKER) position. To listen to a receiver over a headset, place that receiver's audio selector switch in the down (PHONE) position. The center (OFF) position turns off all audio from the associated receiver.

USED WITH ONE OR TWO TRANSMITTERS



USED WITH THREE TRANSMITTERS

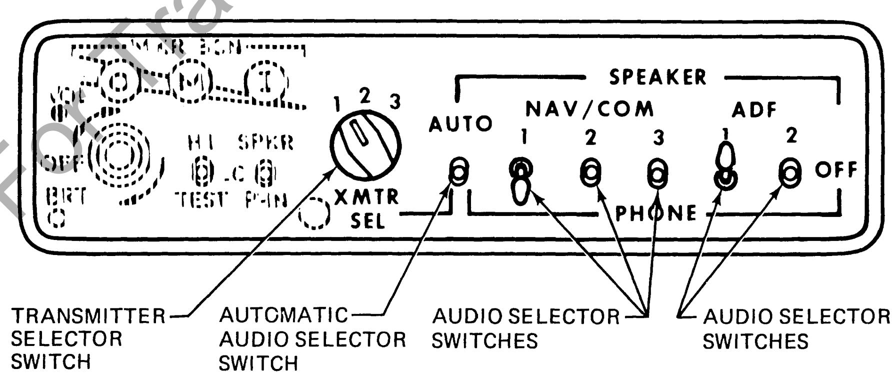


Figure 7-10. Audio Control Panel

NOTE

Volume level is adjusted using the individual receiver volume controls on each radio.

A special feature of the audio control panel used when one or two transmitters are installed is separate control of NAV and COM audio from the NAV/COM radios. With this installation, the audio selector switches labeled NAV, 1 and 2 select audio from the navigation receivers of the NAV/COM radios only. Communication receiver audio is selected by the switches labeled COM, AUTO and BOTH. Description and operation of these switches is described in later paragraphs.

When the audio control panel for three transmitters is installed, audio from both NAV and COM frequencies is combined, and is selected by the audio selector switches labeled NAV/COM, 1, 2 and 3.

COM AUTO AUDIO SELECTOR SWITCH

The audio control panel used with either one or two transmitters incorporates a three-position toggle switch, labeled COM AUTO, which is provided to automatically match the audio of the appropriate NAV/COM communications receiver to the transmitter selected by the transmitter selector switch. When the COM AUTO selector switch is placed in the up (SPEAKER) position, audio from the communications receiver selected by the transmitter selector switch will be heard on the airplane speaker. Switching the transmitter selector switch to the other transmitter automatically switches the other communications receiver audio to the speaker. This automatic audio switching feature may also be utilized when listening on a headset by placing the COM AUTO switch in the down (PHONE) position. If automatic audio selection is not desired, the COM AUTO selector switch should be placed in the center (OFF) position.

COM BOTH AUDIO SELECTOR SWITCH

The audio control panel used with either one or two transmitters incorporates a three-position toggle switch, labeled COM BOTH, which is provided to allow both COM receivers to be monitored at the same time. For example, if the COM AUTO switch is in the SPEAKER position, with the transmitter selector switch in the number one transmitter position, number one communications receiver audio will be heard on the airplane speaker. If it is also desired to monitor the number two communications receiver audio without changing the position of the transmitter selector switch, place the COM BOTH selector switch in the up (SPEAKER) position so that the number two communications receiver audio will be heard in addition to the number one communications receiver audio. This feature can also be used when listening on a headset by placing the COM

BOTH audio selector switch in the down (PHONE) position.

NOTE

The combination of placing the COM AUTO switch in the SPEAKER position and the COM BOTH switch in the PHONE position (or vice versa) is not normally recommended as it will cause audio from both communications receivers (and any other navigation receiver with its audio selector switch in the PHONE position) to be heard on **both** the airplane speaker and the headset simultaneously.

AUTO AUDIO SELECTOR SWITCH

The audio control panel used with three transmitters incorporates a three-position toggle switch, labeled AUTO, which is provided to automatically match the audio of the appropriate NAV/COM receiver to the selected transmitter. To utilize this automatic feature, leave all NAV/COM audio selector switches in the center (OFF) position, and place the AUTO selector switch in either the SPEAKER or PHONE position, as desired. Once the AUTO selector switch is positioned, the pilot may then select any transmitter and its associated NAV/COM receiver audio simultaneously with the transmitter selector switch. If automatic audio selection is not desired, the AUTO selector switch should be placed in the center (OFF) position.

NOTE

If the NAV/COM audio selector switch corresponding to the selected transmitter is in the PHONE position with the AUTO selector switch in the SPEAKER position, all audio selector switches placed in the PHONE position will automatically be connected to both the airplane speaker and any headsets in use.

ANNUNCIATOR LIGHTS BRIGHTNESS AND TEST SWITCH

The audio control panel used with either one or two transmitters incorporates a three-position toggle-type switch to control the brightness level of the marker beacon indicator lights (and certain other annunciator lights associated with avionics equipment). When the switch is placed in the center (DAY) position, the indicator lights will show full bright. When this switch is placed in the up (NITE) position, the lights are set to a reduced level for typical night operations and can be further adjusted using the RADIO LT dimming rheostat knob. The down (TEST) position illuminates all lamps (except the ARC light in the NAV indicators) which are controlled by the switch to the full bright level to verify lamp operation.

SIDETONE OPERATION

Cessna radios are equipped with sidetone capability (monitoring of the operator's own voice transmission). While adjusting sidetone, be aware that if the sidetone volume level is set too high, audio feedback (squeal) may result when transmitting.

When the airplane has one or two transmitters, sidetone is provided in both the speaker and headset anytime the COM AUTO selector switch is utilized. Placing the COM AUTO selector switch in the OFF position will eliminate sidetone. Sidetone internal adjustments are available to the pilot through the front of the audio control panel (see figure 7-10). Adjustment can be made by removing the appropriate plug-button from the audio control panel (left button for headset adjustment and right button for speaker adjustment), inserting a small screwdriver into the adjustment potentiometer and rotating it clockwise to increase the sidetone volume level.

When the airplane has three transmitters, sidetone will be heard on either the speaker or a headset as selected with the AUTO selector switch. Sidetone may be eliminated by placing the AUTO selector switch in the OFF position, and utilizing the individual audio selector switches. Adjustment of speaker and headset sidetone volume can only be accomplished by adjusting the sidetone potentiometers located inside the audio control panel.

NOTE

Sidetone is not available on HF transceivers (Type PT10-A and ASB-125), when installed.

MICROPHONE-HEADSET INSTALLATIONS

Three types of microphone-headset installations are offered. The standard system provided with avionics equipment includes a hand-held microphone and separate headset. The keying switch for this microphone is on the microphone. Two optional microphone-headset installations are also available; these feature a single-unit microphone-headset combination which permits the pilot to conduct radio communications without interrupting other control operations to handle a hand-held microphone. One microphone-headset combination is offered without a padded headset and the other version has a padded headset. The microphone-headset combinations utilize a remote keying switch located on the left grip of the pilot's control wheel. The microphone and headset jacks are located near the lower left corner of the instrument panel. Audio to all three headsets is controlled by the individual audio selector switches and adjusted for volume level by using the selected receiver volume controls.

NOTE

When transmitting, the pilot should key the microphone, place the microphone as close as possible to the lips and speak directly into it.

STATIC DISCHARGERS

If frequent IFR flights are planned, installation of wick-type static dischargers is recommended to improve radio communications during flight through dust or various forms of precipitation (rain, snow or ice crystals). Under these conditions, the build-up and discharge of static electricity from the trailing edges of the wings, rudder, elevator, propeller tips and radio antennas can result in loss of usable radio signals on all communications and navigation radio equipment. Usually the ADF is first to be affected and VHF communication equipment is the last to be affected.

Installation of static dischargers reduces interference from precipitation static, but it is possible to encounter severe precipitation static conditions which might cause the loss of radio signals, even with static dischargers installed. Whenever possible, avoid known severe precipitation areas to prevent loss of dependable radio signals. If avoidance is impractical, minimize airspeed and anticipate temporary loss of radio signals while in these areas.

SECTION 8
AIRPLANE HANDLING, SERVICE & MAINTENANCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

INTRODUCTION

This section contains factory-recommended procedures for proper ground handling and routine care and servicing of your Cessna. It also identifies certain inspection and maintenance requirements which must be followed if your airplane is to retain that new-plane performance and dependability. It is wise to follow a planned schedule of lubrication and preventive maintenance based on climatic and flying conditions encountered in your locality.

Keep in touch with your Cessna Dealer and take advantage of his knowledge and experience. He knows your airplane and how to maintain it. He will remind you when lubrications and oil changes are necessary, and about other seasonal and periodic services.

IDENTIFICATION PLATE

All correspondence regarding your airplane should include the SERIAL NUMBER. The Serial Number, Model Number, Production Certificate Number (PC) and Type Certificate Number (TC) can be found on the Identification Plate, located on the lower part of the left forward doorpost. Located adjacent to the Identification Plate is a Finish and Trim Plate which contains a code describing the interior color scheme and exterior paint combination of the airplane. The code may be used in conjunction with an applicable Parts Catalog if finish and trim information is needed.

OWNER FOLLOW-UP SYSTEM

Your Cessna Dealer has an Owner Follow-Up System to notify you when he receives information that applies to your Cessna. In addition, if you wish, you may choose to receive similar notification, in the form of Service Letters, directly from the Cessna Customer Services Department. A subscription form is supplied in your Customer Care Program book for your use, should you choose to request this service. Your Cessna Dealer will be glad to supply you with details concerning these follow-up programs, and stands ready, through his Service Department, to supply you with fast, efficient, low-cost service.

PUBLICATIONS

Various publications and flight operation aids are furnished in the airplane when delivered from the factory. These items are listed below.

- CUSTOMER CARE PROGRAM BOOK
- PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL
- AVIONICS OPERATION GUIDE
- PILOT'S CHECKLISTS
- POWER COMPUTER
- CUSTOMER CARE DEALER DIRECTORY
- DO'S AND DON'TS ENGINE BOOKLET

The following additional publications, plus many other supplies that are applicable to your airplane, are available from your Cessna Dealer.

- INFORMATION MANUAL (Contains Pilot's Operating Handbook Information)
- SERVICE MANUALS AND PARTS CATALOGS FOR YOUR:
  - AIRPLANE
  - ENGINE AND ACCESSORIES
  - AVIONICS AND AUTOPILOT

Your Cessna Dealer has a Customer Care Supplies Catalog covering all available items, many of which he keeps on hand. He will be happy to place an order for any item which is not in stock.

NOTE

A Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual which is lost or destroyed may be replaced by contacting your Cessna Dealer or writing directly to the Customer Services Department, Cessna Aircraft Company, Wichita, Kansas. An affidavit containing the owner's name, airplane serial number and registration number must be included in replacement requests since the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual is identified for specific airplanes only.

AIRPLANE FILE

There are miscellaneous data, information and licenses that are a part of the airplane file. The following is a checklist for that file. In addition, a periodic check should be made of the latest Federal Aviation Regulations to ensure that all data requirements are met.

A. To be displayed in the airplane at all times:
   1. Aircraft Airworthiness Certificate (FAA Form 8100-2).
   2. Aircraft Registration Certificate (FAA Form 8050-3).
   3. Aircraft Radio Station License, if transmitter installed (FCC Form 556).
B. To be carried in the airplane at all times:
   1. Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.
   2. Weight and Balance, and associated papers (latest copy of the Repair and Alteration Form, FAA Form 337, if applicable).
   3. Equipment List.
C. To be made available upon request:
   1. Airplane Log Book.
   2. Engine Log Book.

Most of the items listed are required by the United States Federal Aviation Regulations. Since the Regulations of other nations may require other documents and data, owners of airplanes not registered in the United States should check with their own aviation officials to determine their individual requirements.

Cessna recommends that these items, plus the Pilot's Checklists, Power Computer, Customer Care Program book and Customer Care Card, be carried in the airplane at all times.

AIRPLANE INSPECTION PERIODS

FAA REQUIRED INSPECTIONS

As required by Federal Aviation Regulations, all civil aircraft of U.S. registry must undergo a complete inspection (annual) each twelve calendar months. In addition to the required ANNUAL inspection, aircraft operated commercially (for hire) must have a complete inspection every 100 hours of operation.

The FAA may require other inspections by the issuance of airworthiness directives applicable to the airplane, engine, propeller and components. It is the responsibility of the owner/operator to ensure compliance with all applicable airworthiness directives and, when the inspections are repetitive, to take appropriate steps to prevent inadvertent noncompliance.

In lieu of the 100 HOUR and ANNUAL inspection requirements, an airplane may be inspected in accordance with a progressive inspection schedule, which allows the work load to be divided into smaller operations that can be accomplished in shorter time periods.

The CESSNA PROGRESSIVE CARE PROGRAM has been developed to provide a modern progressive inspection schedule that satisfies the complete airplane inspection requirements of both the 100 HOUR and ANNUAL inspections as applicable to Cessna airplanes. The program assists the owner in his responsibility to comply with all FAA inspection requirements, while ensuring timely replacement of life-limited parts and adherence to factory-recommended inspection intervals and maintenance procedures.

CESSNA PROGRESSIVE CARE

The Cessna Progressive Care Program has been designed to help you realize maximum utilization of your airplane at a minimum cost and downtime. Under this program, your airplane is inspected and maintained in four operations at 50-hour intervals during a 200-hour period. The operations are recycled each 200 hours and are recorded in a specially provided Aircraft Inspection Log as each operation is conducted.

The Cessna Aircraft Company recommends Progressive Care for airplanes that are being flown 200 hours or more per year, and the 100-hour inspection for all other airplanes. The procedures for the Progressive Care Program and the 100-hour inspection have been carefully worked out by the factory and are followed by the Cessna Dealer Organization. The complete familiarity of Cessna Dealers with Cessna equipment and factory-approved procedures provides the highest level of service possible at lower cost to Cessna owners.

Regardless of the inspection method selected by the owner, he should keep in mind that FAR Part 43 and FAR Part 91 establishes the requirement that properly certified agencies or personnel accomplish all required FAA inspections and most of the manufacturer recommended inspections.

CESSNA CUSTOMER CARE PROGRAM

Specific benefits and provisions of the CESSNA WARRANTY plus other important benefits for you are contained in your CUSTOMER CARE PROGRAM book supplied with your airplane. You will want to thoroughly review your Customer Care Program book and keep it in your airplane at all times.

Coupons attached to the Program book entitle you to an initial inspection and either a Progressive Care Operation No. 1 or the first 100-hour inspection within the first 6 months of ownership at no charge to you. If you take delivery from your Dealer, the initial inspection will have been performed before delivery of the airplane to you. If you pick up your airplane at the factory, plan to take it to your Dealer reasonably soon after you take delivery, so the initial inspection may be performed allowing the

Dealer to make any minor adjustments which may be necessary.

You will also want to return to your Dealer either at 50 hours for your first Progressive Care Operation, or at 100 hours for your first 100-hour inspection depending on which program you choose to establish for your airplane. While these important inspections will be performed for you by any Cessna Dealer, in most cases you will prefer to have the Dealer from whom you purchased the airplane accomplish this work.

PILOT CONDUCTED PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

A certified pilot who owns or operates an airplane not used as an air carrier is authorized by FAR Part 43 to perform limited maintenance on his airplane. Refer to FAR Part 43 for a list of the specific maintenance operations which are allowed.

NOTE

Pilots operating airplanes of other than U.S. registry should refer to the regulations of the country of certification for information on preventive maintenance that may be performed by pilots.

A Service Manual should be obtained prior to performing any preventive maintenance to ensure that proper procedures are followed. Your Cessna Dealer should be contacted for further information or for required maintenance which must be accomplished by appropriately licensed personnel.

ALTERATIONS OR REPAIRS

It is essential that the FAA be contacted **prior to** any alterations on the airplane to ensure that airworthiness of the airplane is not violated. Alterations or repairs to the airplane must be accomplished by licensed personnel.

GROUND HANDLING

TOWING

The airplane is most easily and safely maneuvered by hand with the tow-bar attached to the nose wheel. When towing with a vehicle, do not exceed the nose gear turning angle of 30° either side of center, or damage to the gear will result. If the airplane is towed or pushed over a rough surface during hangaring, watch that the normal cushioning action of the nose strut does not cause excessive vertical movement of the tail and the resulting contact with low hangar doors or structure. A flat nose tire or deflated strut will also increase tail height.

PARKING

When parking the airplane, head into the wind and set the parking brakes. Do not set the parking brakes during cold weather when accumulated moisture may freeze the brakes, or when the brakes are overheated. Install the control wheel lock and chock the wheels. In severe weather and high wind conditions, tie the airplane down as outlined in the following paragraph.

TIE-DOWN

Proper tie-down procedure is the best precaution against damage to the parked airplane by gusty or strong winds. To tie-down the airplane securely, proceed as follows:

1. Set the parking brake and install the control wheel lock.
2. Install a surface control lock over the fin and rudder.
3. Tie sufficiently strong ropes or chains (700 pounds tensile strength) to the wing, tail, and nose tie-down fittings and secure each rope or chain to a ramp tie-down.
4. Install a pitot tube cover.

JACKING

When a requirement exists to jack the entire airplane off the ground, or when wing jack points are used in the jacking operation, refer to the Service Manual for specific procedures and equipment required.

Individual main gear may be jacked by using the jack pad which is incorporated in the main landing gear strut step bracket. When using the individual gear strut jack pad, flexibility of the gear strut will cause the main wheel to slide inboard as the wheel is raised, tilting the jack. The jack must then be lowered for a second jacking operation. **Do not** jack both main wheels simultaneously using the individual main gear jack pads.

If nose gear maintenance is required, the nose wheel may be raised off the ground by pressing down on a tailcone bulkhead, just forward of the horizontal stabilizer, and allowing the tail to rest on the tail tie-down ring.

NOTE

Do not apply pressure on the elevator or outboard stabilizer surfaces. When pushing on the tailcone, always apply pressure at a bulkhead to avoid buckling the skin.

To assist in raising and holding the nose wheel off the ground, weight down the tail by placing sand-bags, or suitable weights, on each side of the horizontal stabilizer, next to the fuselage. If ground anchors are available, the tail should be securely tied down.

NOTE

Ensure that the nose will be held off the ground under all conditions by means of suitable stands or supports under weight supporting bulkheads near the nose of the airplane.

LEVELING

Longitudinal leveling of the airplane is accomplished by placing a level on leveling screws located on the left side of the tailcone. Deflate the nose tire and/or lower or raise the nose strut to properly center the bubble in the level. Corresponding points on both upper door sills may be used to level the airplane laterally.

FLYABLE STORAGE

Airplanes placed in non-operational storage for a maximum of 30 days or those which receive only intermittent operational use for the first 25 hours are considered in flyable storage status. Every seventh day during these periods, the propeller should be rotated by hand through five revolutions. This action "limbers" the oil and prevents any accumulation of corrosion on engine cylinder walls.

WARNING

For maximum safety, check that the ignition switch is OFF, the throttle is closed, the mixture control is in the idle cut-off position, and the airplane is secured before rotating the propeller by hand. Do not stand within the arc of the propeller blades while turning the propeller.

After 30 days, the airplane should be flown for 30 minutes or a ground runup should be made just long enough to produce an oil temperature within the lower green arc range. Excessive ground runup should be avoided.

Engine runup also helps to eliminate excessive accumulation of water in the fuel system and other air spaces in the engine. Keep fuel tanks full to minimize condensation in the tanks. Keep the battery fully charged to prevent the electrolyte from freezing in cold weather. If the airplane is to be stored temporarily, or indefinitely, refer to the Service Manual for proper storage procedures.

SERVICING

In addition to the PREFLIGHT INSPECTION covered in Section 4, COMPLETE servicing, inspection, and test requirements for your airplane are detailed in the Service Manual. The Service Manual outlines all items which require attention at 50, 100, and 200 hour intervals plus those items which require servicing, inspection, and/or testing at special intervals.

Since Cessna Dealers conduct all service, inspection, and test procedures in accordance with applicable Service Manuals, it is recommended that you contact your Cessna Dealer concerning these requirements and begin scheduling your airplane for service at the recommended intervals.

Cessna Progressive Care ensures that these requirements are accomplished at the required intervals to comply with the 100-hour or ANNUAL inspection as previously covered.

Depending on various flight operations, your local Government Aviation Agency may require additional service, inspections, or tests. For these regulatory requirements, owners should check with local aviation officials where the airplane is being operated.

For quick and ready reference, quantities, materials, and specifications for frequently used service items are as follows.

ENGINE OIL

GRADE -- Aviation Grade SAE 20W-50 or SAE 50 above 40°F (4°C).
Aviation Grade SAE 20W-50 or SAE 30 below 40°F (4°C).
Multi-viscosity oil with a range of SAE 20W-50 is recommended for improved starting in cold weather. Ashless dispersant oil, conforming to Continental Motors Specification MHS-24 (and all revisions thereto), **must be used.**

NOTE

Your Cessna was delivered from the factory with a corrosion preventive aircraft engine oil. If oil must be added during the first 25 hours, use only aviation grade straight mineral oil conforming to Specification No. MIL-L-6082.

CAPACITY OF ENGINE SUMP -- 8 Quarts.
Do not operate on less than 6 quarts. To minimize loss of oil through breather, fill to 7 quart level for normal flights of less than 3 hours. For extended flight, fill to 8 quarts. These quantities refer to oil dipstick level readings. During oil and oil filter changes, one additional quart is required when the filter is changed.

OIL AND OIL FILTER CHANGE --

After the first 25 hours of operation, drain engine oil sump and replace filter. Refill sump with straight mineral oil and use until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized; then change to dispersant oil. Drain the engine oil sump and replace the filter each 50 hours thereafter. The oil change interval may be extended to 100-hour intervals, providing the oil filter is changed at 50-hour intervals. Change engine oil at least every 6 months even though less than the recommended hours have accumulated. Reduce intervals for prolonged operation in dusty areas, cold climates, or when short flights and long idle periods result in sludging conditions.

NOTE

During the first 25-hour oil and filter change, a general inspection of the overall engine compartment is required. Items which are not normally checked during a preflight inspection should be given special attention. Hoses, metal lines and fittings should be inspected for signs of oil and fuel leaks, and checked for abrasions, chafing, security, proper routing and support, and evidence of deterioration. Inspect the intake and exhaust systems for cracks, evidence of leakage, and security of attachment. Engine controls and linkages should be checked for freedom of movement through their full range, security of attachment, and evidence of wear. Inspect wiring for security, chafing, burning, defective insulation, loose or broken terminals, heat deterioration, and corroded terminals. A periodic check of these items during subsequent servicing operations is recommended.

FUEL

APPROVED FUEL GRADES (AND COLORS) --

100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
100 (Formerly 100/130) Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

NOTE

Isopropyl alcohol or ethylene glycol monomethyl ether may be added to the fuel supply in quantities not to exceed 1% or .15% by volume, respectively, of the total. Refer to Fuel Additives in later paragraphs for additional information.

CAPACITY EACH STANDARD TANK -- 26 Gallons.
CAPACITY EACH LONG RANGE TANK -- 34 Gallons.

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity when refueling and minimize cross-feeding when parked on a sloping surface, place the fuel selector valve in either LEFT or RIGHT position.

NOTE

Service the fuel system after each flight, and keep fuel tanks full to minimize condensation in the tanks.

FUEL ADDITIVES --

Strict adherence to recommended preflight draining instructions as called for in Section 4 will eliminate any free water accumulations from the tank sumps. While small amounts of water may still remain in solution in the gasoline, it will normally be consumed and go unnoticed in the operation of the engine.

One exception to this can be encountered when operating under the combined effect of: (1) use of certain fuels, with (2) high humidity conditions on the ground (3) followed by flight at high altitude and low temperature. Under these unusual conditions, small amounts of water in solution can precipitate from the fuel stream and freeze in sufficient quantities to induce partial icing of the engine fuel system.

While these conditions are quite rare and will not normally pose a problem to owners and operators, they do exist in certain areas of the world and consequently must be dealt with, when encountered.

Therefore, to alleviate the possibility of fuel icing occurring under these unusual conditions, it is permissible to add isopropyl alcohol or ethylene glycol monomethyl ether (EGME) compound to the fuel supply.

The introduction of alcohol or EGME compound into the fuel provides two distinct effects: (1) it absorbs the dissolved water from the gasoline and (2) alcohol has a freezing temperature depressant effect.

Alcohol, if used, is to be blended with the fuel in a concentration of 1% by volume. Concentrations greater than 1% are not recommended since they can be detrimental to fuel tank materials.

The manner in which the alcohol is added to the fuel is significant because alcohol is most effective when it is completely dissolved in the fuel. To ensure proper mixing, the following is recommended:

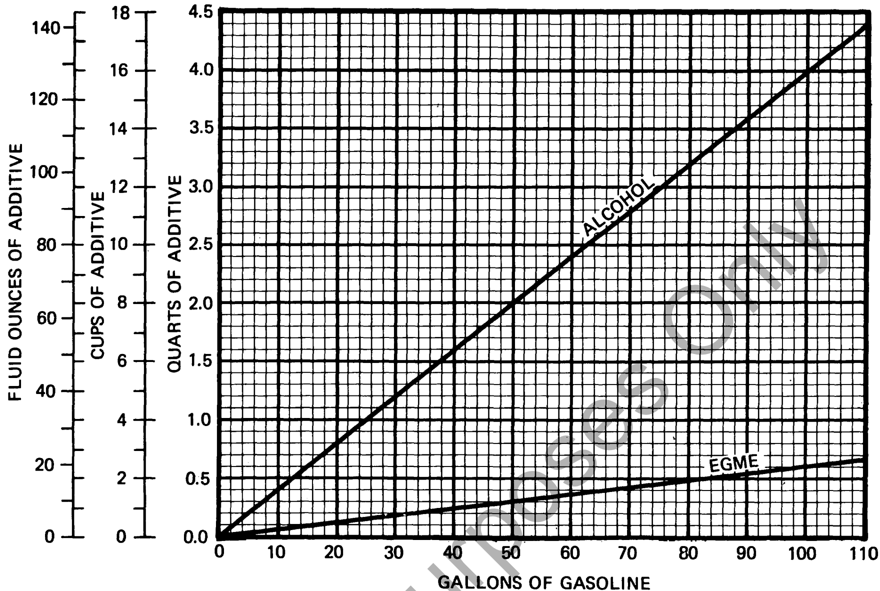


Figure 8-1. Additive Mixing Ratio

1. For best results, the alcohol should be added during the fueling operation by pouring the alcohol directly on the fuel stream issuing from the fueling nozzle.

2. An alternate method that may be used is to premix the complete alcohol dosage with some fuel in a separate clean container (approximately 2-3 gallon capacity) and then transferring this mixture to the tank prior to the fuel operation.

Any high quality isopropyl alcohol may be used, such as Anti-Icing Fluid (MIL-F-5566) or Isopropyl Alcohol (Federal Specification TT-I-735a). Figure 8-1 provides alcohol-fuel mixing ratio information.

Ethylene glycol monomethyl ether (EGME) compound, in compliance with MIL-I-27686 or Phillips PFA-55MB, if used, must be carefully mixed with the fuel in concentrations not to exceed .15% by volume. Figure 8-1 provides EGME-fuel mixing ratio information.

CAUTION

Mixing of the EGME compound with the fuel is extremely important because a concentration in excess of that recommended (.15% by volume maximum) will result in detrimental effects to the fuel tanks, such as deterioration of protective primer and sealants and damage to O-rings and seals in the fuel system and engine components. Use only blending equipment that is recommended by the manufacturer to obtain proper proportioning.

CAUTION

Do not allow the concentrated EGME compound to come in contact with the airplane finish or fuel cell as damage can result.

Prolonged storage of the airplane will result in a water buildup in the fuel which "leeches out" the additive. An indication of this is when an excessive amount of water accumulates in the fuel tank sumps. The concentration can be checked using a differential refractometer. It is imperative that the technical manual for the differential refractometer be followed explicitly when checking the additive concentration.

LANDING GEAR

NOSE WHEEL TIRE PRESSURE -- 45 PSI on 5.00-5, 6-Ply Rated Tire.
MAIN WHEEL TIRE PRESSURE -- 38 PSI on 6.00-6, 6-Ply Rated Tires.
NOSE GEAR SHOCK STRUT --
Keep filled with MIL-H-5606 hydraulic fluid and inflated with air to 45 PSI. Do not over-inflate.

CLEANING AND CARE

WINDSHIELD-WINDOWS

The plastic windshield and windows should be cleaned with an aircraft windshield cleaner. Apply the cleaner sparingly with soft cloths, and rub with moderate pressure until all dirt, oil scum and bug stains are removed. Allow the cleaner to dry, then wipe it off with soft flannel cloths.

If a windshield cleaner is not available, the plastic can be cleaned with soft cloths moistened with Stoddard solvent to remove oil and grease.

NOTE

Never use gasoline, benzine, alcohol, acetone, fire extinguisher or anti-ice fluid, lacquer thinner or glass cleaner to clean the plastic. These materials will attack the plastic and may cause it to craze.

Follow by **carefully** washing with a mild detergent and plenty of water. Rinse thoroughly, then dry with a clean moist chamois. **Do not rub** the plastic with a dry cloth since this builds up an electrostatic charge which attracts dust. Waxing with a good commercial wax will finish the cleaning job. A thin, even coat of wax, polished out by hand with clean soft flannel cloths, will fill in minor scratches and help prevent further scratching.

Do not use a canvas cover on the windshield unless freezing rain or sleet is anticipated since the cover may scratch the plastic surface.

PAINTED SURFACES

The painted exterior surfaces of your new Cessna have a durable, long lasting finish and, under normal conditions, require no polishing or buffing. Approximately 10 days are required for the paint to cure completely; in most cases, the curing period will have been completed prior to delivery of the airplane. In the event that polishing or buffing is required within the curing period, it is recommended that the work be done by someone experienced in handling uncured paint. Any Cessna Dealer can accomplish this work.

Generally, the painted surfaces can be kept bright by washing with water and mild soap, followed by a rinse with water and drying with cloths or a chamois. Harsh or abrasive soaps or detergents which cause corrosion or scratches should never be used. Remove stubborn oil and grease with a cloth moistened with Stoddard solvent.

Waxing is unnecessary to keep the painted surfaces bright. However, if desired, the airplane may be waxed with a good automotive wax. A heavier coating of wax on the leading edges of the wings and tail and on the engine nose cap and propeller spinner will help reduce the abrasion encountered in these areas.

When the airplane is parked outside in cold climates and it is necessary to remove ice before flight, care should be taken to protect the painted surfaces during ice removal with chemical liquids. Isopropyl alcohol will satisfactorily remove ice accumulations without damaging the paint. While applying the de-icing solution, keep it away from the windshield and cabin windows since the alcohol will attack the plastic and may cause it to craze.

PROPELLER CARE

Preflight inspection of propeller blades for nicks, and wiping them occasionally with an oily cloth to clean off grass and bug stains will assure long, trouble-free service. Small nicks on the propeller, particularly near the tips and on the leading edges, should be dressed out as soon as possible since these nicks produce stress concentrations, and if ignored, may result in cracks. Never use an alkaline cleaner on the blades; remove grease and dirt with Stoddard solvent.

ENGINE CARE

The engine may be cleaned with Stoddard solvent, or equivalent, then dried thoroughly.

CAUTION

Particular care should be given to electrical equipment before cleaning. Cleaning fluids should not be allowed to enter magnetos, starter, alternator and the like. Protect these components before saturating the engine with solvents. All other openings should also be covered before cleaning the engine assembly. Caustic cleaning solutions should be used cautiously and should always be properly neutralized after their use.

INTERIOR CARE

To remove dust and loose dirt from the upholstery and carpet, clean the interior regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Blot up any spilled liquid promptly with cleansing tissue or rags. Don't pat the spot; press the blotting material firmly and hold it for several seconds. Continue blotting until no more liquid is taken up. Scrape off sticky materials with a dull knife, then spot-clean the area.

Oily spots may be cleaned with household spot removers, used sparingly. Before using any solvent, read the instructions on the container and test it on an obscure place on the fabric to be cleaned. Never saturate the fabric with a volatile solvent; it may damage the padding and backing materials.

Soiled upholstery and carpet may be cleaned with foam-type detergent, used according to the manufacturer's instructions. To minimize wetting the fabric, keep the foam as dry as possible and remove it with a vacuum cleaner.

If your airplane is equipped with leather seating, cleaning of the seats is accomplished using a soft cloth or sponge dipped in mild soap suds. The soap suds, used sparingly, will remove traces of dirt and grease. The soap should be removed with a clean damp cloth.

The plastic trim, headliner, instrument panel and control knobs need only be wiped off with a damp cloth. Oil and grease on the control wheel and control knobs can be removed with a cloth moistened with Stoddard solvent. Volatile solvents, such as mentioned in paragraphs on care of the windshield, must never be used since they soften and craze the plastic.

SECTION 9
SUPPLEMENTS
(Optional Systems Description & Operating Procedures)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

This section consists of a series of supplements, each covering a single optional system which may be installed in the airplane. Each supplement contains a brief description, and when applicable, operating limitations, emergency and normal procedures, and performance. As listed in the Table of Contents, the supplements are classified under the headings of major configuration variations, general and avionics, and have been provided with reference numbers. Also, the supplements are arranged alphabetically and numerically to make it easier to locate a particular supplement. Other routinely installed items of optional equipment, whose function and operational procedures do not require detailed instructions, are discussed in Section 7.

Limitations contained in the following supplements are FAA approved. Observance of these operating limitations is required by Federal Aviation Regulations.

SUPPLEMENT

FLOATPLANE

SECTION 1
GENERAL

INTRODUCTION

This supplement, written especially for operators of the Cessna Hawk XP floatplane, provides information not found in the basic handbook. It contains procedures and data required for safe and efficient operation of the airplane equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats.

Information contained in the basic handbook for the Hawk XP, which is the same as that for the floatplane, is generally not repeated in this supplement.

PERFORMANCE - SPECIFICATIONS

SPEED:		
Maximum at Sea Level		118 KNOTS
Cruise, 80% Power at 6000 Ft		116 KNOTS
CRUISE: Recommended lean mixture with fuel allowance for engine start, taxi, takeoff, climb and 45 minutes reserve.		
80% Power at 6000 Ft	Range	395 NM
49 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	3.4 HRS
80% Power at 6000 Ft	Range	570 NM
66 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	4.9 HRS
Maximum Range at 10,000 Ft	Range	495 NM
49 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	5.5 HRS
Maximum Range at 10,000 Ft	Range	705 NM
66 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	7.9 HRS
RATE OF CLIMB AT SEA LEVEL		870 FPM
SERVICE CEILING		15,500 FT
TAKEOFF PERFORMANCE:		
Water Run		1135 FT
Total Distance Over 50-Ft Obstacle		1850 FT
LANDING PERFORMANCE:		
Water Run		660 FT
Total Distance Over 50-Ft Obstacle		1325 FT
STALL SPEED (CAS):		
Flaps Up, Power Off		50 KNOTS
Flaps Down, Power Off		44 KNOTS
MAXIMUM WEIGHT:		
Ramp (Dock)		2558 LBS
Takeoff or Landing		2550 LBS
STANDARD EMPTY WEIGHT:		
Hawk XP		1800 LBS
Hawk XP II		1827 LBS
MAXIMUM USEFUL LOAD:		
Hawk XP		758 LBS
Hawk XP II		731 LBS
BAGGAGE ALLOWANCE		200 LBS
WING LOADING: Pounds/Sq Ft		14.7
POWER LOADING: Pounds/HP		13.1
FUEL CAPACITY: Total		
Standard Tanks		52 GAL.
Long Range Tanks		68 GAL.
OIL CAPACITY		9 QTS
ENGINE: Teledyne Continental, Fuel Injection 195 BHP at 2600 RPM		IO-360-KB
PROPELLER: Constant Speed, Diameter		80 IN.

DESCRIPTIVE DATA

PROPELLER

Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Accessory Division.
Propeller Model Number: 2A34C203/90DCA-10.
Number of Blades: 2.
Propeller Diameter, Maximum: 80 inches.
Minimum: 78.5 inches.
Propeller Type: Constant speed and hydraulically actuated, with a low pitch setting of 11.3° and high pitch setting of 24.8° (30 inch station).

MAXIMUM CERTIFICATED WEIGHT

Ramp (Dock): 2558 lbs.
Takeoff: 2550 lbs.
Landing: 2550 lbs.
Weight in Baggage Compartment:
Baggage Area 1 - Station 82 to 108: 200 lbs. See note below.
Baggage Area 2 - Station 108 to 142: 50 lbs. See note below.

NOTE

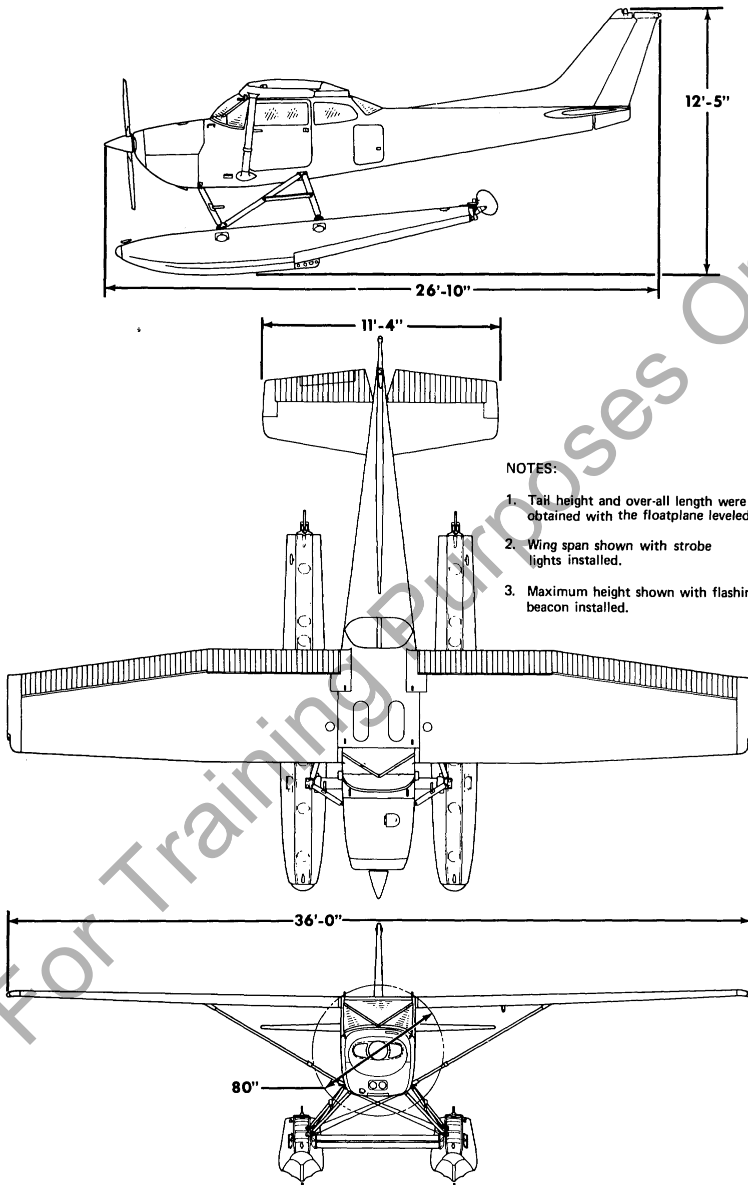
The maximum combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 200 lbs.

STANDARD AIRPLANE WEIGHTS

Standard Empty Weight, Hawk XP: 1800 lbs.
Hawk XP II: 1827 lbs.
Maximum Useful Load, Hawk XP: 758 lbs.
Hawk XP II: 731 lbs.

SPECIFIC LOADINGS

Wing Loading: 14.7 lbs./sq. ft.
Power Loading: 13.1 lbs./hp.



NOTES:

1. Tail height and over-all length were obtained with the floatplane leveled.
2. Wing span shown with strobe lights installed.
3. Maximum height shown with flashing beacon installed.

Figure 1. Three View

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

INTRODUCTION

Except as shown in this section, the floatplane operating limitations are the same as those for the Hawk XP landplane when operating in the Normal Category. The limitations in this section apply only to operations of the Model R172K equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats. The limitations included in this section have been approved by the Federal Aviation Administration. Observance of the operating limitations is required by Federal Aviation Regulations.

AIRSPEED LIMITATIONS

Airspeed limitations and their operational significance are shown in figure 2.

	SPEED	KCAS	KIAS	REMARKS
V_{NE}	Never Exceed Speed	161	163	Do not exceed this speed in any operation.
V_{NO}	Maximum Structural Cruising Speed	127	129	Do not exceed this speed except in smooth air, and then only with caution.
V_A	Maneuvering Speed: 2550 Pounds 2300 Pounds 2050 Pounds	 102 97 91	 104 99 93	Do not make full or abrupt control movements above this speed.
V_{FE}	Maximum Flap Extended Speed: 10° Flaps 10° - 40° Flaps	 109 87	 110 85	Do not exceed this speed with flaps down.

Figure 2. Airspeed Limitations

AIRSPEED INDICATOR MARKINGS

Airspeed indicator markings are the same as those shown in the basic handbook.

POWER PLANT LIMITATIONS

Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Accessory Division.
Propeller Model Number: 2A34C203/90DCA-10.
Propeller Diameter, Maximum: 80 inches.
Minimum: 78.5 inches.
Propeller Blade Angle at 30 Inch Station, Low: 11.3°.
High: 24.8°.

WEIGHT LIMITS

Maximum Ramp (Dock) Weight: 2558 lbs.
Maximum Takeoff Weight: 2550 lbs.
Maximum Landing Weight: 2550 lbs.
Maximum Weight in Baggage Compartment:
Baggage Area 1 - Station 82 to 108: 200 lbs. See note below.
Baggage Area 2 - Station 108 to 142: 50 lbs. See note below.

NOTE

The maximum combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 200 lbs.

NOTE

When floats and the optional child's seat are installed, it is possible to exceed the maximum takeoff weight with all seats occupied and minimum fuel.

CENTER OF GRAVITY LIMITS

Center of Gravity Range:
Forward: 37.0 inches aft of datum at 2100 lbs. or less, with straight line variation to 39.5 inches aft of datum at 2550 lbs.
Aft: 45.5 inches aft of datum at all weights.
Reference Datum: Lower portion of front face of firewall.

MANEUVER LIMITS

The floatplane is certificated in the normal category. The normal category is applicable to aircraft intended for non-aerobatic operations. These include any maneuvers incidental to normal flying, stalls (except whip stalls), lazy eights, chandelles, and steep turns in which the angle of bank is not more than 60°. Aerobatic maneuvers, including spins, are not approved.

FLIGHT LOAD FACTOR LIMITS

Flight Load Factors (Maximum Takeoff Weight - 2550 lbs.):
*Flaps Up .... +3.8g, -1.52g
*Flaps Down .... +3.0g

*The design load factors are 150% of the above, and in all cases, the structure meets or exceeds design loads.

OTHER LIMITATIONS

FLAP LIMITATIONS

Approved Takeoff Range: 0° to 20°.
Approved Landing Range: 0° to 40°.

PLACARDS

The following information must be displayed in the form of composite or individual placards in addition to those specified in the basic handbook.

1. In full view of the pilot: (The "DAY-NIGHT-VFR-IFR" entry, shown on the example below, will vary as the airplane is equipped).

> The markings and placards installed in this airplane contain operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in the Normal Category. Other operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in this category are contained in the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.
>
> No acrobatic maneuvers, including spins, approved.
>
> Flight into known icing conditions prohibited.
>
> This airplane is certified for the following flight operations as of date of original airworthiness certificate:
>
> DAY—NIGHT—VFR—IFR

2. Near water rudder stowage hook:

> WATER RUDDER ALWAYS UP
> EXCEPT WATER TAXIING

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

INTRODUCTION

Checklist and amplified procedures contained in the basic handbook generally should be followed. The additional or changed procedures specifically required for operation of the Model R172K equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats are presented in this section.

AIRSPEEDS FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION

The speeds listed below should be substituted, as appropriate, for the speeds contained in Section 3 of the basic handbook.

Engine Failure After Takeoff:	
Wing Flaps Up	65 KIAS
Wing Flaps Down 20°	60 KIAS
Maneuvering Speed:	
2550 Lbs	104 KIAS
2300 Lbs	99 KIAS
2050 Lbs	93 KIAS
Maximum Glide:	
2550 Lbs	70 KIAS
2300 Lbs	66 KIAS
2050 Lbs	63 KIAS
Precautionary Landing With Engine Power, Flaps Down	60 KIAS
Landing Without Engine Power:	
Wing Flaps Up	70 KIAS
Wing Flaps Down	60 KIAS

OPERATIONAL CHECKLISTS

ENGINE FAILURE

ENGINE FAILURE DURING TAKEOFF RUN

1. Throttle -- IDLE.
2. Control Wheel -- FULL AFT.
3. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
4. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
5. Master Switch -- OFF.

FORCED LANDINGS

EMERGENCY LANDING ON WATER WITHOUT ENGINE POWER

1. Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).
   60 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF.
4. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
5. Water Rudders -- UP.
6. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED.
7. Master Switch -- OFF.
8. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO APPROACH.
9. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
10. Control Wheel -- HOLD FULL AFT as floatplane decelerates.

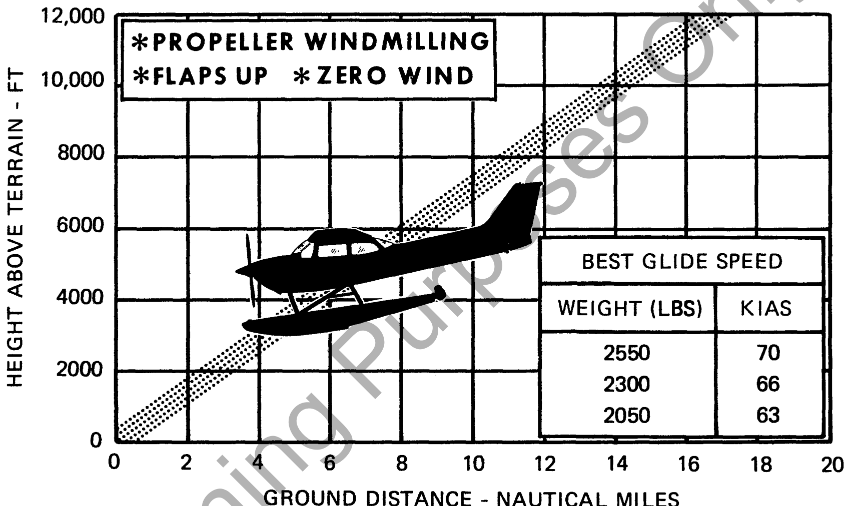
EMERGENCY LANDING ON LAND WITHOUT ENGINE POWER

1. Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).
   60 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF.
4. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
5. Water Rudders -- UP.
6. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED (40° recommended).
7. Master Switch -- OFF.
8. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO APPROACH.
9. Touchdown -- LEVEL ATTITUDE.
10. Control Wheel -- FULL AFT (after contact).

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

MAXIMUM GLIDE

After an engine failure in flight, the best glide speed as shown in figure 3 should be established as quickly as possible.



BEST GLIDE SPEED	
WEIGHT (LBS)	KIAS
2550	70
2300	66
2050	63

Figure 3. Maximum Glide

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

INTRODUCTION

Checklist and amplified procedures contained in the basic handbook generally should be followed. The additional or changed procedures specifically required for operation of the Model R172K equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats are presented in this section.

SPEEDS FOR NORMAL OPERATION

Unless otherwise noted, the following speeds are based on a maximum weight of 2550 pounds and may be used for any lesser weight.

Takeoff:	
Normal Climb Out	60-70 KIAS
Maximum Performance, Flaps 20°, Speed at 50 Feet	56 KIAS
Enroute Climb, Flaps Up:	
Normal	80-90 KIAS
Best Rate of Climb, Sea Level	72 KIAS
Best Rate of Climb, 10,000 Feet	66 KIAS
Best Angle of Climb, Sea Level	56 KIAS
Best Angle of Climb, 10,000 Feet	60 KIAS
Landing Approach:	
Normal Approach, Flaps Up	65-75 KIAS
Normal Approach, Flaps 40°	55-65 KIAS
Maximum Performance Approach, Flaps 40°	60 KIAS
Balked Landing:	
Maximum Power, Flaps 20°	55 KIAS
Maximum Recommended Turbulent Air Penetration Speed:	
2550 Lbs	104 KIAS
2300 Lbs	99 KIAS
2050 Lbs	93 KIAS
Maximum Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity:	
Takeoff or Landing	13 KNOTS

CHECKLIST PROCEDURES

PREFLIGHT INSPECTION

1. Pilot's Operating Handbook and Floatplane Supplement -- AVAILABLE IN THE AIRPLANE.
2. Floats and Struts -- INSPECT for dents, cracks, scratches, etc.
3. Float Compartments -- INSPECT for water accumulation.

NOTE

Remove rubber balls which serve as stoppers on the standpipe in each float compartment and pump out any accumulation of water. Reinstall rubber balls with enough pressure for a snug fit.

4. Water Rudders -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.

BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

1. Water Rudder Operation -- CHECK VISUALLY.
2. Water Rudders -- DOWN for taxiing (retraction handle removed from stowage hook).

TAKEOFF

1. Water Rudders -- UP (retraction handle secured on stowage hook).
2. Wing Flaps -- 0°- 20° (20° preferred).
3. Cowl Flap -- OPEN.
4. Control Wheel -- HOLD FULL AFT.
5. Power -- FULL THROTTLE and 2600 RPM (advance slowly).
6. Mixture -- LEAN FOR LAKE ELEVATION.
7. Control Wheel -- MOVE FORWARD when the nose stops rising to attain planing attitude (on the step).
8. Airspeed -- 45-50 KIAS.
9. Control Wheel -- APPLY LIGHT BACK PRESSURE to lift off.

NOTE

To reduce takeoff water run, the technique of raising one float out of the water may be used. This procedure is described in the amplified procedures in this section.

10. Climb Speed -- 55-65 KIAS (flaps 20°).
    60-70 KIAS (flaps UP).

With obstacles ahead, climb at 56 KIAS (flaps 20°).

11. Wing Flaps -- UP after all obstacles are cleared.

ENROUTE CLIMB

NORMAL CLIMB

1. Airspeed -- 80-90 KIAS.

MAXIMUM PERFORMANCE CLIMB

1. Airspeed -- 72 KIAS (sea level) to 66 KIAS (10,000 feet).

BEFORE LANDING

1. Water Rudders -- UP.
2. Wing Flaps -- AS DESIRED (0° - 10° below 110 KIAS, 10° - 40° below 85 KIAS).
3. Airspeed -- 65-75 KIAS (flaps UP).
   55-65 KIAS (flaps DOWN).

LANDING

1. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
2. Control Wheel -- HOLD FULL AFT as floatplane decelerates to taxi speed.

NOTE

With forward loadings, a slight nose-down pitch may occur if the elevator is not held full up as floatplane comes down off step.

AFTER LANDING

1. Water Rudders -- DOWN.

SECURING AIRPLANE

1. Fuel Selector Valve -- LEFT TANK or RIGHT TANK to prevent cross-feeding and ensure maximum fuel capacity when refueling.

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

TAXIING

Taxi with water rudders down. It is best to limit the engine speed to 800 RPM for normal taxi because water piles up in front of the float bow at higher engine speeds. Taxiing with higher engine RPM may result in engine overheating and will not appreciably increase the taxi speed. In addition, it may lead to water spray striking the propeller tips, causing propeller tip erosion.

During all low speed taxi operations, the elevator should be positioned to keep the float bows out of the water as far as possible. Normally this requires holding the control wheel full aft.

For minimum taxi speed in close quarters, use idle RPM and a single magneto. This procedure is recommended for short periods of time only.

Although taxiing is very simple with the water rudders, it is sometimes necessary to "sail" the floatplane under high wind conditions. In addition to the normal flight controls, the wing flaps and cabin doors will aid in "sailing". Water rudders should be retracted during "sailing".

Rudder trim may be used to reduce rudder pedal forces while taxiing in crosswinds or for extended sailing in one direction.

To taxi great distances, it may be advisable to taxi on the step with the water rudders retracted. Turns on the step from an upwind heading may be made with safety providing they are not too sharp and if ailerons are used counteract any overturning tendency.

TAKEOFF

Start the takeoff by applying full throttle smoothly while holding the control wheel full aft. When the nose stops rising, move the control wheel forward slowly to place the floatplane on the step. Slow control movement and light control pressures produce the best results. Attempts to force the floatplane into the planing attitude will generally result in loss of speed and delay in getting on the step. The floatplane will assume a planing attitude which permits acceleration to takeoff speed, at which time the floatplane will fly off smoothly.

The use of 20° wing flaps throughout the takeoff run is recommended. Upon reaching a safe altitude and airspeed, retract the wing flaps slowly, especially when flying over glassy water because a loss of altitude is not very apparent over such a surface.

If porpoising is encountered while on the step, apply additional control wheel back pressure to correct the excessively nose-low attitude. If this does not correct the porpoising, immediately reduce power to idle and allow the floatplane to slow to taxi speed, at which time the takeoff can again be initiated.

MAXIMUM PERFORMANCE TAKEOFF

To clear an obstacle after takeoff with 20° wing flaps, use an obstacle clearance speed of 56 KIAS for maximum performance. Takeoff distances are shown in Section 5 for this technique, and on water conditions that are smooth but non-glassy. Under some adverse combinations of takeoff weight, pressure altitude, and air temperature, operation on glassy water may require significantly longer takeoff distances to accelerate to the liftoff speed, and allowance should be made for this.

If liftoff is difficult due to high lake elevation or glassy water, the following procedure is recommended: With the floatplane in the planing attitude, apply full aileron to raise one float out of the water. When one float leaves the water, apply slight elevator back pressure to complete the takeoff. Care must be taken to stop the rising wing as soon as the float is clear of the water, and in crosswinds, raise only the downwind wing. With one float out of the water, the floatplane accelerates to takeoff speed almost instantaneously.

CROSSWIND TAKEOFF

For a crosswind takeoff, start the takeoff run with wing flaps up, ailerons partially deflected into the wind, and water rudders extended for better directional control. Flaps should be extended to 20° and the water rudders retracted when the floatplane is on the step; the remainder of the takeoff is normal. If the floats are lifted from the water one at a time, the downwind float should be lifted first.

ENROUTE CLIMB

When conducting the following climbs, the mixture should be leaned as shown by the fuel flow placard, located on the instrument panel.

NORMAL CLIMB

Normal climbs are conducted at 80-90 KIAS with flaps up, full throttle, and 2600 RPM.

BEST RATE OF CLIMB

The best rate-of-climb speeds range from 72 KIAS at sea level to 66 KIAS at 10,000 feet with flaps up, full throttle, and 2600 RPM.

BEST ANGLE OF CLIMB

If an obstruction ahead requires a steep climb angle, a best angle-of-climb speed should be used with flaps up and maximum power. This speed is 56 KIAS at sea level, increasing to 60 KIAS at 10,000 feet. Climbs at speeds lower than the best rate-of-climb speed should be of short duration to improve engine cooling.

CRUISE

Cruise power settings and corresponding fuel consumption are shown on the Cruise Performance charts, figure 9 in this supplement. Range and endurance information is shown in figures 10 and 11 in this supplement.

LANDING

Normal landings can be made power on or power off using approach speeds of 65-75 KIAS with flaps up and 55-65 KIAS with flaps down.

GLASSY WATER LANDING

With glassy water conditions, flaps should be extended to 20° and enough power used to maintain a low rate of descent (approximately 200 feet per minute). The floatplane should be flown onto the water at this sink rate with no flare attempted since height above glassy water is nearly impossible to judge. Power should be reduced to idle and control wheel back pressure increased upon contacting the surface. As the floatplane decelerates off the step, apply full back pressure on the control wheel. If this glassy water technique is used in conjunction with an obstacle clearance approach, allowance should be made for appreciably longer total distances than are shown in Section 5 to clear a 50-foot obstacle.

CROSSWIND LANDING

The wing-low slip method should be used with the upwind float contacting the surface first.

NOISE ABATEMENT

The certificated noise level for the Model R172K Floatplane at 2550 pounds maximum weight is 75.0 dB(A). No determination has been made by the Federal Aviation Administration that the noise levels of this airplane are or should be acceptable or unacceptable for operation at, into, or out of, any landing area.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

INTRODUCTION

The information presented in the Introduction, Use of Performance Charts, and Sample Problem paragraphs in Section 5 of the basic handbook is applicable to the floatplane. Using this information, and the performance charts in this supplement, complete flight planning may be accomplished.

Cruise performance data in this supplement applies to the Model R172K equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats and is based on a standard day temperature as shown on the charts. The effect of temperature variations from standard can be determined by using the applicable cruise charts in the basic handbook for the landplane.

DEMONSTRATED OPERATING TEMPERATURE

Satisfactory engine cooling has been demonstrated for this floatplane with an outside air temperature 23°C above standard. This is not to be considered as an operating limitation. Reference should be made to Section 2 for engine operating limitations.

AIRSPEED CALIBRATION

NORMAL STATIC SOURCE

FLAPS UP											
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140
KCAS	47	54	62	70	79	88	98	108	118	128	138
FLAPS 20°											
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---
KCAS	48	55	63	71	81	86	---	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 40°											
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---
KCAS	47	54	63	72	82	87	---	---	---	---	---

Figure 4. Airspeed Calibration

STALL SPEEDS

CONDITIONS:
Power Off

NOTES:
1. Altitude loss during a stall recovery may be as much as 250 feet.
2. KIAS values are approximate.

MOST REARWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

WEIGHT LBS	FLAP DEFLECTION	ANGLE OF BANK							
		0°		30°		45°		60°	
		KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
2550	UP	44	50	47	54	52	59	62	71
	20°	36	45	38	48	43	54	51	64
	40°	35	44	37	47	42	52	50	62

MOST FORWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

WEIGHT LBS	FLAP DEFLECTION	ANGLE OF BANK							
		0°		30°		45°		60°	
		KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
2550	UP	48	53	52	57	57	63	68	75
	20°	43	50	46	54	51	59	61	71
	40°	42	48	45	52	50	57	59	68

Figure 5. Stall Speeds

TAKEOFF DISTANCE

MAXIMUM PERFORMANCE

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 20°
2600 RPM and Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open
Zero Wind

NOTE:
Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind.

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
2000	15
4000	14

WEIGHT LBS	TAKEOFF SPEED KIAS		PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	LIFT OFF	AT 50 FT		WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2550	49	56	S.L.	975	1615	1080	1765	1195	1940	1325	2130	1470	2345
			1000	1105	1815	1230	1995	1365	2195	1520	2420	1700	2680
			2000	1265	2050	1405	2265	1570	2505	2760	2775	1975	3095
			3000	1450	2335	1625	2590	1825	2880	2055	3215	2325	3605
			4000	1680	2680	1895	2990	2140	3345	2430	3765	2775	4260

Figure 6. Takeoff Distance

MAXIMUM RATE OF CLIMB

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12
12,000	10

WEIGHT LBS	PRESS ALT FT	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB - FPM		
			0^oC	20^oC	40^oC
2550	S.L.	72	940	845	750
	2000	71	820	730	635
	4000	69	700	615	525
	6000	68	585	500	415
	8000	67	465	385	305
	10,000	66	350	275	---
	12,000	65	235	160	---

Figure 7. Maximum Rate of Climb

TIME, FUEL, AND DISTANCE TO CLIMB

MAXIMUM RATE OF CLIMB

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open
Standard Temperature

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12
12,000	10

NOTES:
1. Add 1.4 gallons of fuel for engine start, taxi and takeoff allowance.
2. Increase time, fuel and distance by 10% for each $10^{o}C$ above standard temperature.
3. Distances shown are based on zero wind.

WEIGHT LBS	PRESSURE ALTITUDE FT	TEMP °C	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB FPM	FROM SEA LEVEL		
					TIME MIN	FUEL USED GALLONS	DISTANCE NM
2550	S.L.	15	72	870	0	0	0
	1000	13	71	820	1	0.3	1
	2000	11	71	770	2	0.6	3
	3000	9	70	720	4	1.0	5
	4000	7	69	670	5	1.3	6
	5000	5	69	620	7	1.7	8
	6000	3	68	570	9	2.0	11
	7000	1	68	520	10	2.4	13
	8000	-1	67	470	12	2.9	15
	9000	-3	66	420	15	3.3	18
	10,000	-5	66	370	17	3.8	22
	11,000	-7	65	320	20	4.3	26
	12,000	-9	65	270	24	4.9	30

Figure 8. Time, Fuel, and Distance to Climb (Sheet 1 of 2)

TIME, FUEL, AND DISTANCE TO CLIMB

NORMAL CLIMB - 85 KIAS

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
2600 RPM
Full Throttle
Mixture Set at Placard Fuel Flow
Cowl Flap Open
Standard Temperature

MIXTURE SETTING	
PRESS ALT	GPH
S.L.	16
4000	14
8000	12

NOTES:
1. Add 1.4 gallons of fuel for engine start, taxi and takeoff allowance.
2. Increase time, fuel and distance by 10% for each $8^{o}C$ above standard temperature.
3. Distances shown are based on zero wind.

WEIGHT LBS	PRESSURE ALTITUDE FT	TEMP °C	RATE OF CLIMB FPM	FROM SEA LEVEL		
				TIME MIN	FUEL USED GALLONS	DISTANCE NM
2550	S.L.	15	810	0	0	0
	1000	13	755	1	0.3	2
	2000	11	700	3	0.7	4
	3000	9	650	4	1.1	6
	4000	7	595	6	1.4	8
	5000	5	540	8	1.9	11
	6000	3	485	10	2.3	14
	7000	1	430	12	2.8	17
	8000	-1	375	14	3.3	21

Figure 8. Time, Fuel, and Distance to Climb (Sheet 2 of 2)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 2000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

> NOTE
>
> For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE 11°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	24	81	114	11.4
	23	76	110	10.7
	22	71	106	10.0
	21	65	102	9.3
2500	25	81	114	11.5
	24	77	111	10.8
	23	72	107	10.2
	22	67	103	9.5
2400	25	76	110	10.8
	24	72	107	10.2
	23	67	103	9.5
	22	63	100	8.9
2300	25	72	107	10.1
	24	67	103	9.5
	23	63	100	8.9
	22	59	96	8.4
2200	25	67	103	9.4
	24	63	99	8.9
	23	59	95	8.3
	22	55	91	7.8
	21	51	87	7.3
	20	47	83	6.8
	19	43	77	6.3

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 1 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 4000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE 7°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	23	79	114	11.1
	22	73	110	10.4
	21	68	106	9.7
	20	63	101	9.0
2500	24	79	114	11.2
	23	75	111	10.6
	22	70	107	9.9
	21	65	103	9.3
2400	24	74	111	10.5
	23	70	107	9.9
	22	65	103	9.2
	21	61	99	8.6
2300	24	70	107	9.9
	23	65	103	9.3
	22	61	99	8.7
	21	57	95	8.1
2200	24	65	103	9.2
	23	61	99	8.7
	22	57	95	8.1
	21	53	91	7.6
	20	49	86	7.1
	19	45	80	6.6

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 2 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 6000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

> NOTE
> For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE 3°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	23	81	117	11.5
	22	76	114	10.8
	21	71	110	10.1
	20	66	105	9.3
2500	23	77	114	10.9
	22	73	111	10.3
	21	68	107	9.6
	20	63	103	9.0
2400	23	72	110	10.2
	22	68	107	9.6
	21	63	102	9.0
	20	59	98	8.4
2300	23	68	107	9.6
	22	64	103	9.0
	21	59	98	8.4
	20	55	94	7.9
2200	23	63	103	9.0
	22	59	98	8.4
	21	55	94	7.9
	20	51	90	7.4
	19	47	84	6.8
	18	43	78	6.4

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 3 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 8000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE -1°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	21	74	114	10.5
	20	69	109	9.8
	19	64	104	9.0
	18	59	99	8.3
2500	21	71	111	10.0
	20	66	107	9.4
	19	61	102	8.7
	18	56	97	8.1
2400	21	65	106	9.3
	20	61	101	8.6
	19	56	97	8.0
	18	52	91	7.5
2300	21	62	102	8.7
	20	57	98	8.2
	19	53	93	7.6
	18	48	87	7.0
2200	21	57	98	8.2
	20	53	93	7.7
	19	49	88	7.1
	18	45	81	6.6

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 4 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 10,000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE -5°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	19	67	108	9.4
	18	61	103	8.7
	17	56	97	8.0
	16	51	90	7.3
2500	19	64	106	9.1
	18	59	101	8.4
	17	54	95	7.8
	16	49	87	7.1
2400	19	59	100	8.3
	18	54	95	7.8
	17	49	89	7.2
	16	45	82	6.6
2300	19	55	96	7.9
	18	51	91	7.3
	17	46	84	6.8
2200	19	51	91	7.4
	18	47	85	6.9
	17	43	78	6.4

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 5 of 6)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

PRESSURE ALTITUDE 12,000 FEET

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture
Cowl Flap Closed

NOTE

For best fuel economy at 70% power or less, operate at 1 GPH leaner than shown in this chart or at peak EGT if an EGT indicator is installed.

		STANDARD TEMPERATURE -9°C		
RPM	MP	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2600	18	64	107	9.1
	17	59	102	8.4
	16	53	95	7.7
	15	48	86	7.0
2500	18	62	105	8.8
	17	57	99	8.1
	16	51	92	7.4
	15	45	82	6.7
2400	18	56	99	8.0
	17	52	92	7.5
	16	47	85	6.9
	15	43	77	6.4
2300	18	53	94	7.6
	17	48	88	7.1
	16	44	80	6.5
2200	18	49	89	7.1
	17	45	82	6.6

Figure 9. Cruise Performance (Sheet 6 of 6)

RANGE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
49 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature
Zero Wind

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the distance during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

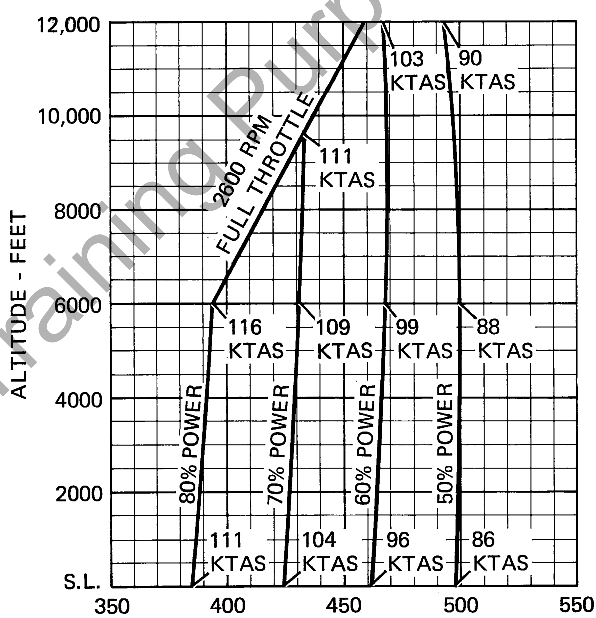


Figure 10. Range Profile (Sheet 1 of 2)

RANGE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
66 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature
Zero Wind

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the distance during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

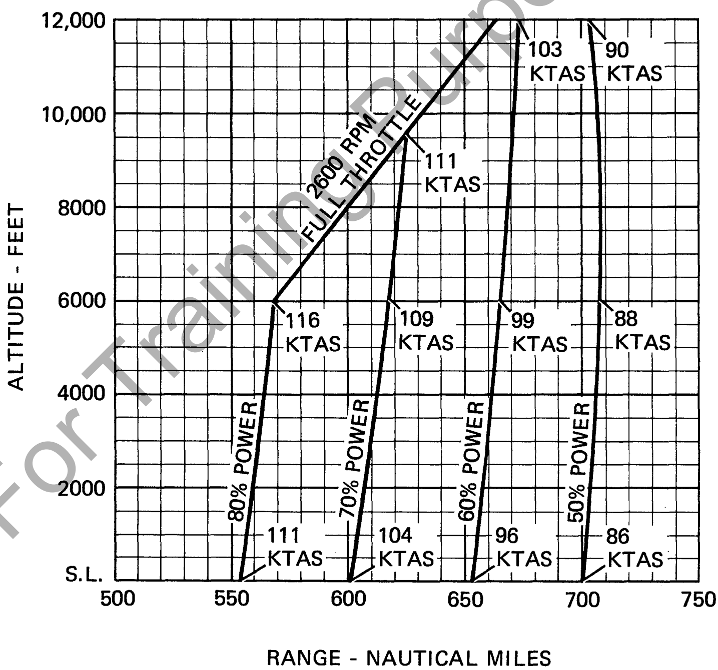


Figure 10. Range Profile (Sheet 2 of 2)

ENDURANCE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
49 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the time during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

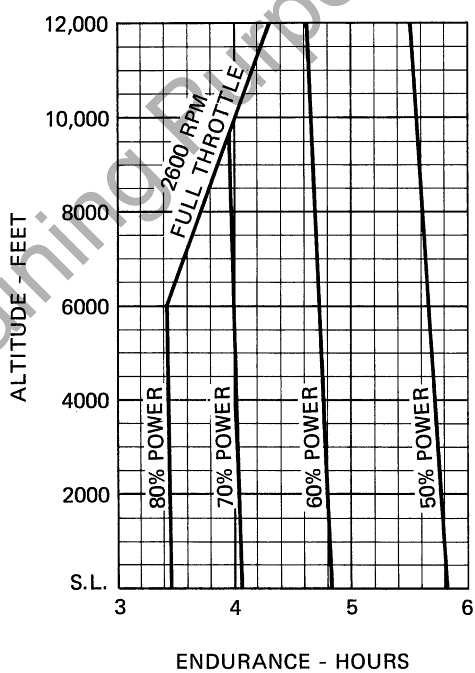


Figure 11. Endurance Profile (Sheet 1 of 2)

ENDURANCE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
66 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise
Standard Temperature

NOTE:
This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the time during a normal climb up to 8,000 feet and maximum climb above 8,000 feet.

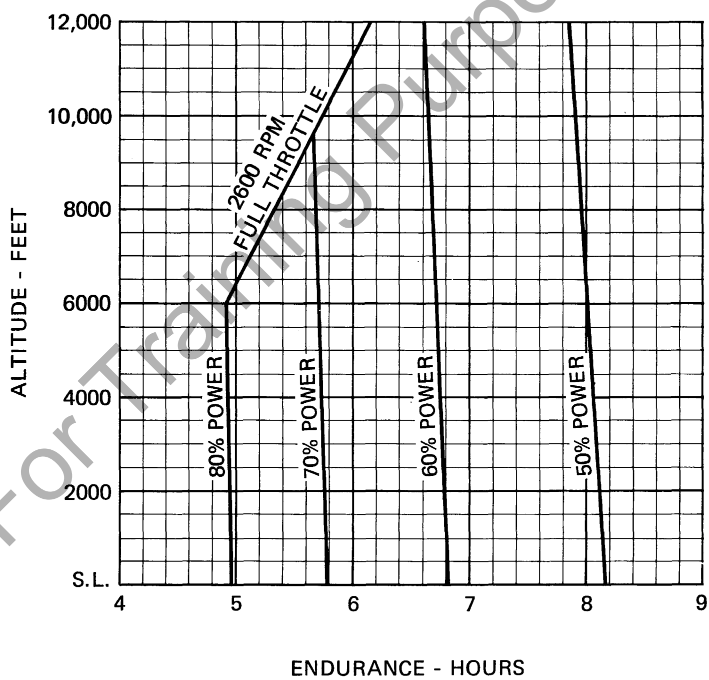


Figure 11. Endurance Profile (Sheet 2 of 2)

LANDING DISTANCE

MAXIMUM PERFORMANCE

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 40°
Power Off
Zero Wind

NOTES:
1. Refer to Section 4 for recommended technique if water surface is glassy.
2. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind.

WEIGHT LBS	SPEED AT 50 FT KIAS	PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
			WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	WATER RUN	TOTAL TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2550	60	S.L.	625	1275	650	1310	670	1340	695	1375	715	1410
		1000	650	1310	670	1340	695	1380	720	1415	745	1450
		2000	675	1345	700	1385	720	1415	745	1455	770	1490
		3000	700	1385	725	1420	750	1460	775	1500	800	1535
		4000	725	1420	750	1460	775	1500	805	1545	830	1580

Figure 12. Landing Distance

SECTION 6
WEIGHT & BALANCE

INTRODUCTION

Weight and balance information contained in the basic handbook generally should be used, and will enable you to operate the floatplane within the prescribed weight and center of gravity limitations. The changed information specifically required for operation of the Model R172K equipped with Edo Model 248B-2440 floats is presented in this section.

NOTE

When floats and the optional child's seat are installed, it is possible to exceed the maximum takeoff weight with all seats occupied and minimum fuel.

It is the responsibility of the pilot to ensure that the floatplane is loaded properly.

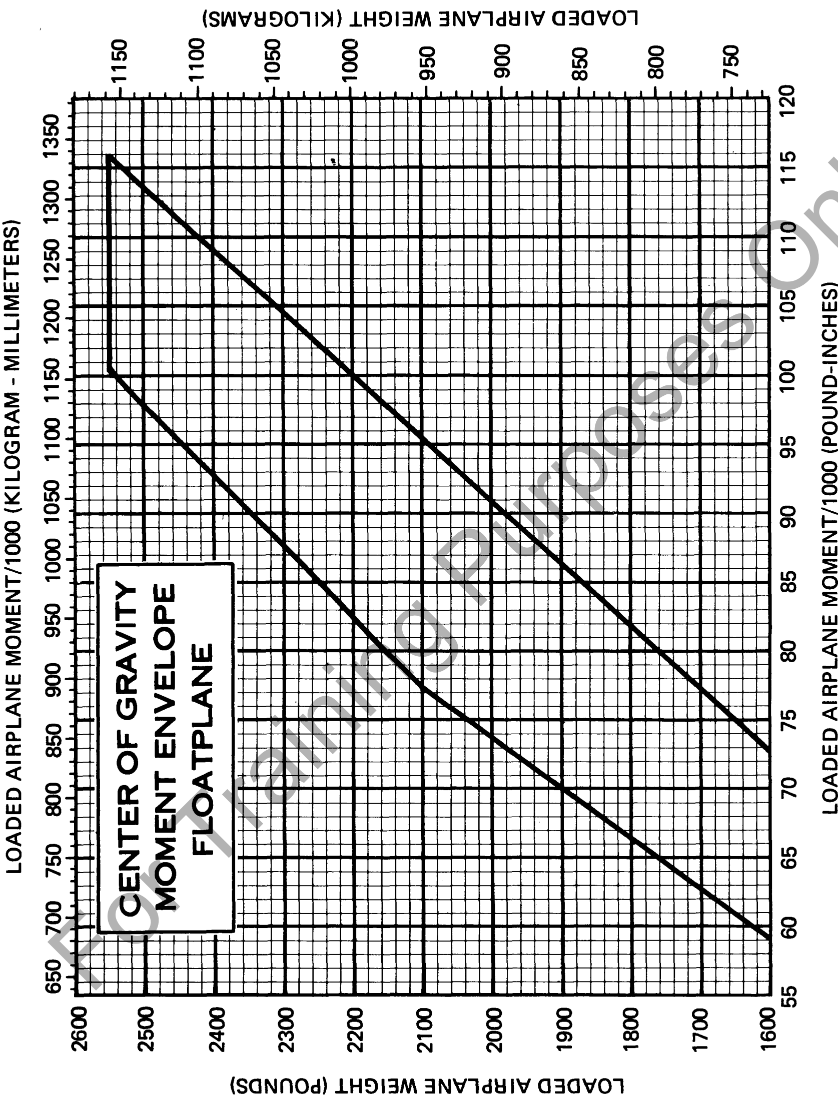


Figure 13. Center of Gravity Moment Envelope

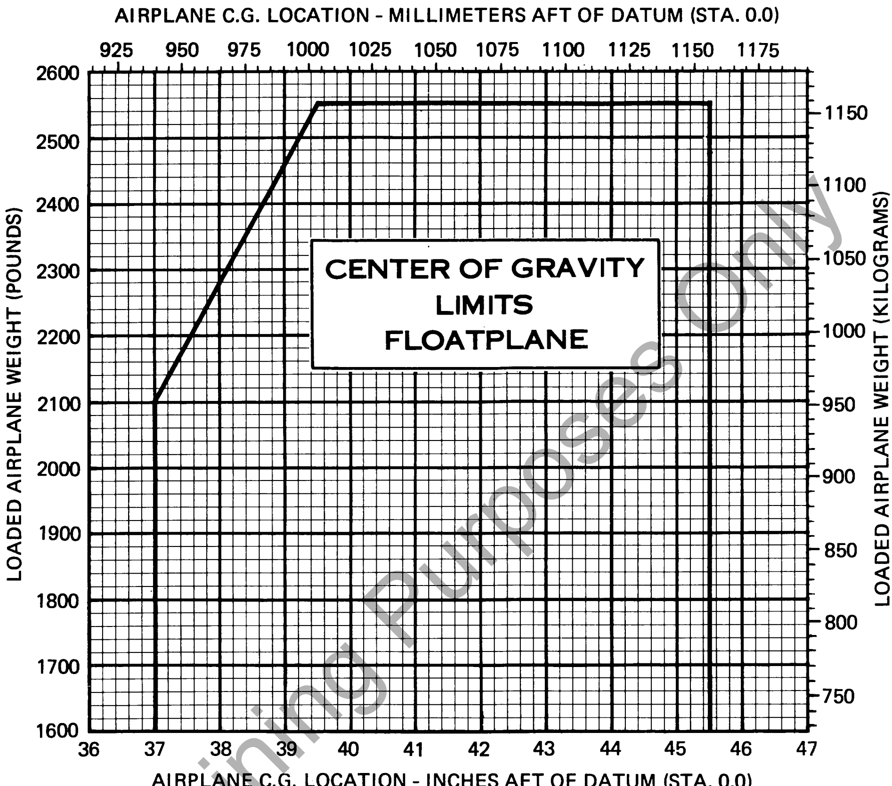


Figure 14. Center of Gravity Limits

SECTION 7
AIRPLANE & SYSTEMS DESCRIPTIONS

INTRODUCTION

This section contains a description of the modifications and equipment associated specifically with the installation of Edo Model 248B-2440 floats on the Model R172K.

THE FLOATPLANE

The floatplane is identical to the landplane with the following exceptions:

1. Floats, incorporating a water rudder steering system, replace the landing gear. A water rudder retraction handle, connected to the dual water rudders by cables, is located on the cabin floor.
2. Additional fuselage structure is added to support the float installation.
3. An additional structural "V" brace is installed between the top of the front door posts and the cowl deck.
4. The airplane has additional corrosion-proofing and stainless steel cables.
5. The fuel strainer installation is modified for floatplane use.
6. Hoisting provisions are added to the top of the fuselage.
7. Fueling steps and assist handles are mounted on the forward fuselage, and steps are mounted on the wing struts to aid in refueling the airplane.
8. Interconnect springs are added between the rudder and aileron control systems.
9. A heavier rudder trim bungee is added.
10. Two tailcone rudder centering bungees are added.
11. The standard propeller is replaced with a propeller of larger diameter (80 inches).
12. Floatplane placards are added.

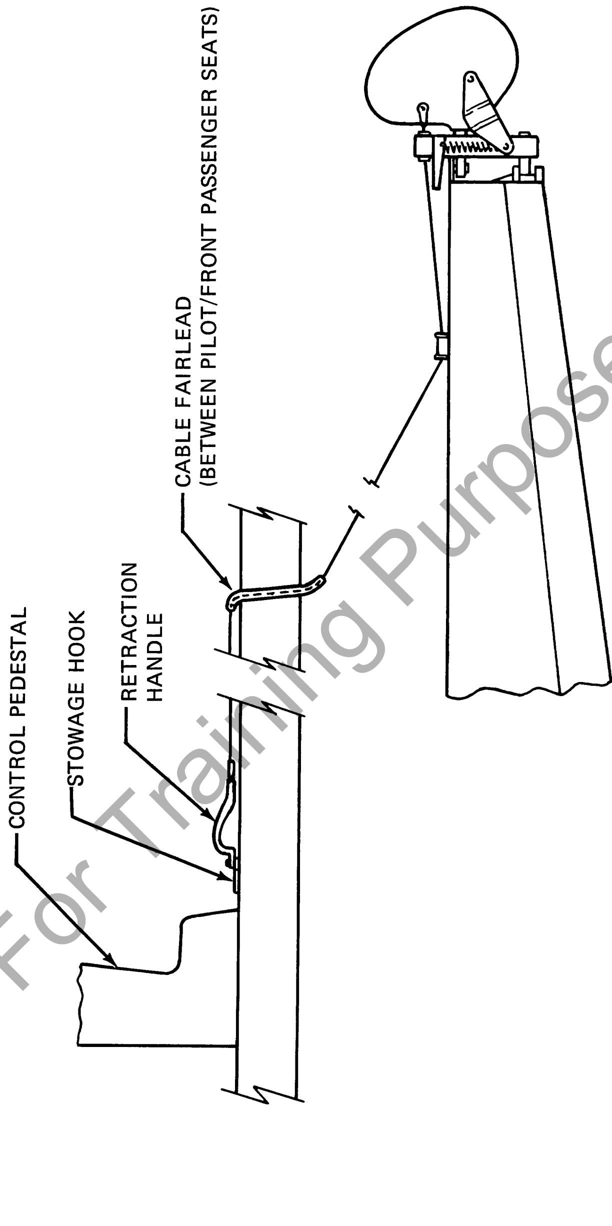


Figure 15. Water Rudder Retraction System

WATER RUDDER SYSTEM

Retractable water rudders (figure 15), mounted at the aft end of each float, are connected by a system of cables and springs to the rudder pedals. Normal rudder pedal operation moves the water rudders to provide steering control (figure 16) for taxiing.

A water rudder retraction handle, located on the cabin floor between the front seats, is used to manually raise and lower the water rudders. During takeoff, landing, and in flight, the handle should be secured on the stowage hook located on the cabin floor just aft of the control pedestal. With the handle in this position, the water rudders are up. When the handle is removed from the hook and allowed to move full aft, the water rudders extend to the full down position for taxiing.

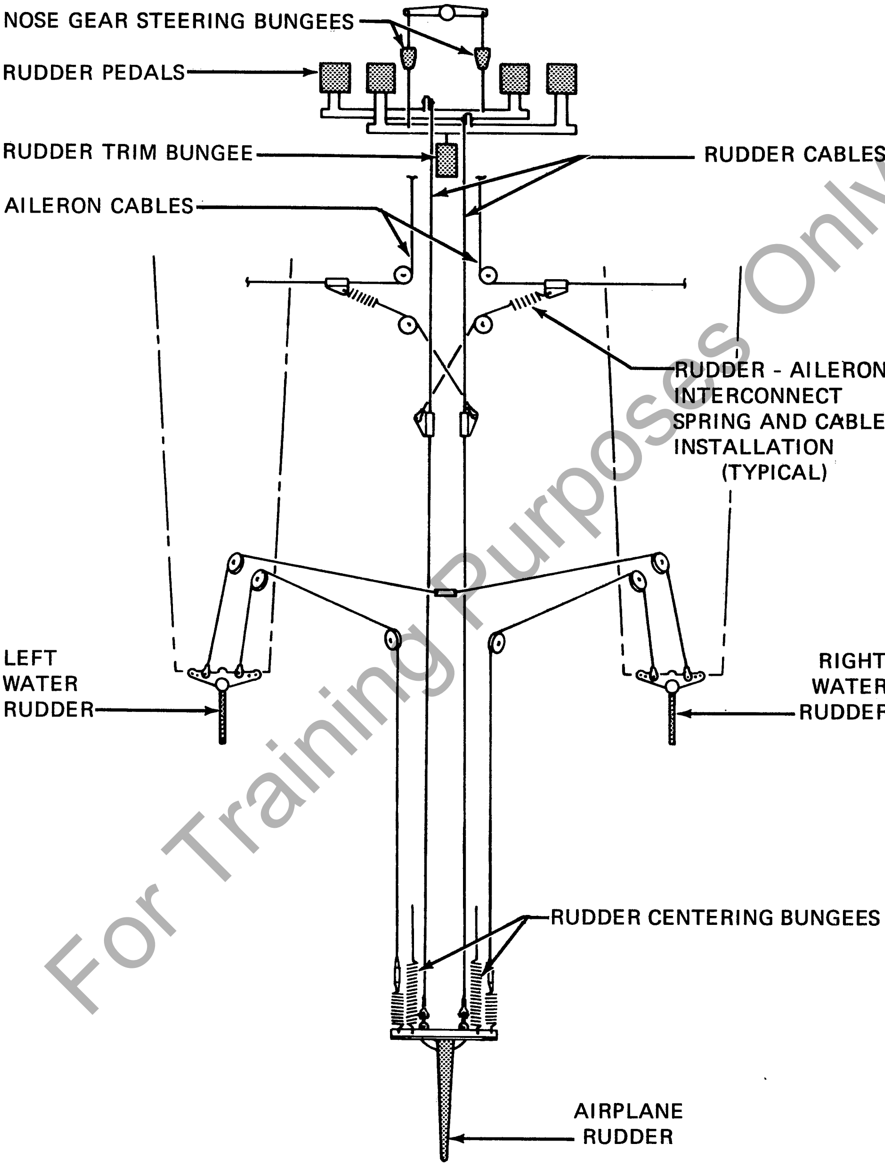


Figure 16. Water Rudder Steering System

SECTION 8
AIRPLANE HANDLING, SERVICE & MAINTENANCE

INTRODUCTION

Section 8 of the basic handbook applies, in general, to the floatplane. The following recommended procedures apply specifically to floatplane operation. (Cleaning and maintenance of the floats should be accomplished as suggested in the Edo Corporation Service and Maintenance Manual for Floats.)

MOORING

Proper securing of the floatplane can vary considerably, depending on the type of operation involved and the facilities available. Each operator should use the method most appropriate for his operation. Some of the most common mooring alternatives are as follows:

1. The floatplane can be moored to a buoy, using a yoke tied to the forward float cleats, so that it will freely weathervane into the wind.
2. The floatplane can be secured to a dock using the fore and aft cleats of one float, although this method is generally not recommended unless the water is calm and the floatplane is attended.
3. The floatplane may be removed from the water (by use of a special lift under the spreader bars) and secured by using the wing tie-down rings and float cleats. If conditions permit the floatplane to be beached, ensure that the shoreline is free of rocks or abrasive material that may damage the floats.

SUPPLEMENT

CIRCULATION FAN SYSTEM

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The circulation fan system provides cabin ventilation during ground operations, and a better distribution of cabin air to the passengers during flight operations. The system control is located on the control pedestal, and consists of a rotary control knob, labeled CIRCULATION FAN. The control knob rotates clockwise from OFF through three positions labeled LOW, MED, and HI, providing three blower speeds. System electrical protection is provided by a 5-amp circuit breaker, labeled CIR FAN, on the left side of the switch and control panel.

Additional system components (see figure 1) include a circulation fan and motor located above the extended baggage compartment, system ducting, and four fully adjustable outlets above the cabin side windows. The circulation fan and motor includes an electric motor, equipped with an output shaft on each end, attached to squirrel-cage type blowers within blower housings which provide airflow through the ducts to the cabin outlets.

The volume of airflow through the cabin outlets is controlled by the rotary knob on the control pedestal; adjustable louvers on each outlet control the direction of airflow.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when the circulation fan system is installed.

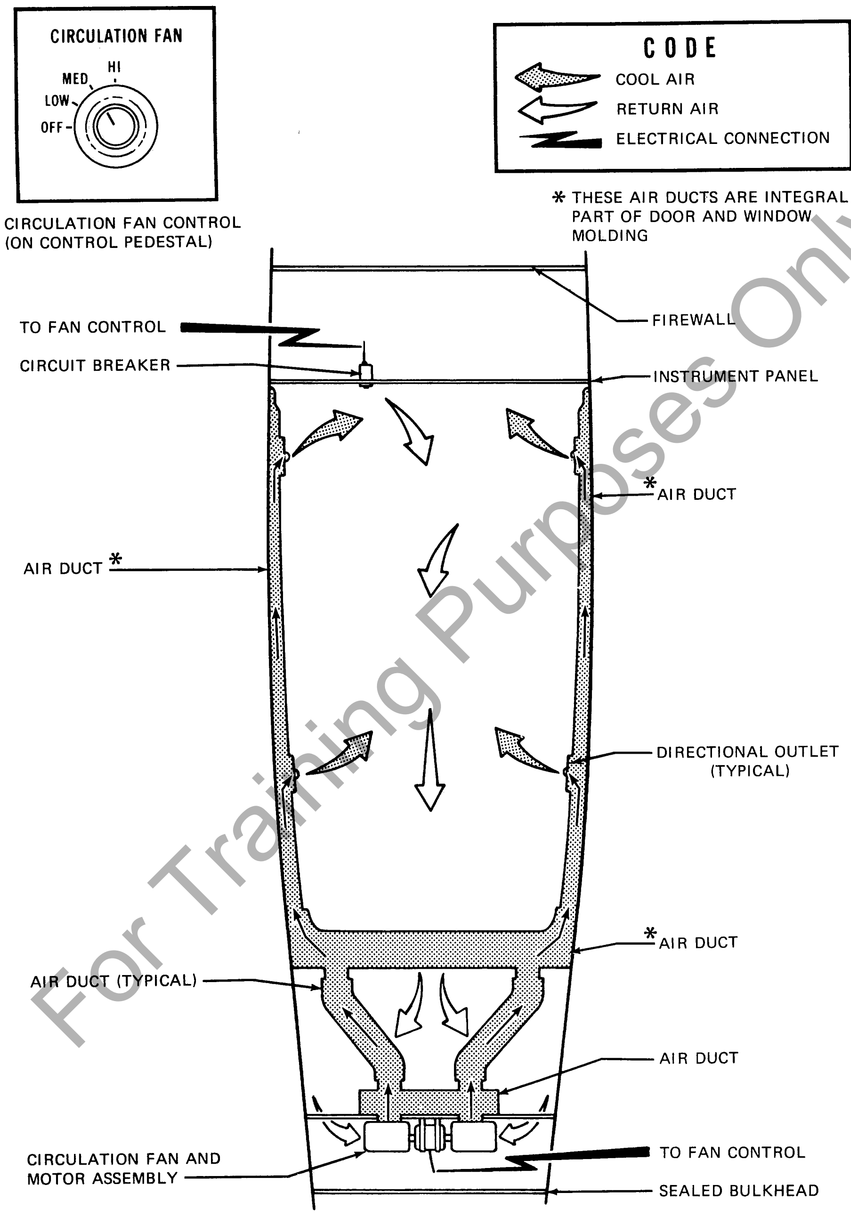


Figure 1. Circulation Fan System

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the circulation fan system is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

PREFLIGHT INSPECTION

In hot weather during the preflight (walk-around) inspection, open both cabin doors to aid in cool-down of the cabin before flight.

OPERATION ON GROUND

After preflight inspection and engine start, use the following procedures for best utilization of the system prior to flight.

1. Cabin Window(s) -- OPEN.
2. Cabin Air Control Knob -- PULL OUT.
3. Wing Root Ventilators -- OPEN.
4. CIRCULATION FAN Control Knob -- HI.

BEFORE TAKEOFF

1. Cabin Window(s) -- CLOSED AND LOCKED.

OPERATION IN FLIGHT

The inflight operation of the circulation fan system is basically the same as for ground operation. The cabin air control knob, wing root ventilators, and the circulation fan control knob may be adjusted, as required to provide the desired cabin ventilation.

After landing, the cabin window(s) may be open while taxiing to the tie-down area or ramp to help ventilate the cabin.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the circulation fan system is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

DIGITAL CLOCK

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Astro Tech LC-2 Quartz Chronometer (see figure 1) is a precision, solid state time keeping device which will display to the pilot the time-of-day, the calendar date, and the elapsed time interval between a series of selected events, such as in-flight check points or legs of a cross-country flight, etc. These three modes of operation function independently and can be alternately selected for viewing on the four digit liquid crystal display (LCD) on the front face of the instrument. Three push button type switches directly below the display control all time keeping functions. These control functions are summarized in figures 2 and 3.

The digital display features an internal light (back light) to ensure good visibility under low cabin lighting conditions or at night. The intensity of the back light is controlled by the RADIO LT rheostat. In addition, the display incorporates a test function (see figure 1) which allows checking that all elements of the display are operating. To activate the test function, press the LH and RH buttons at the same time.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when the digital clock is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the digital clock is installed.

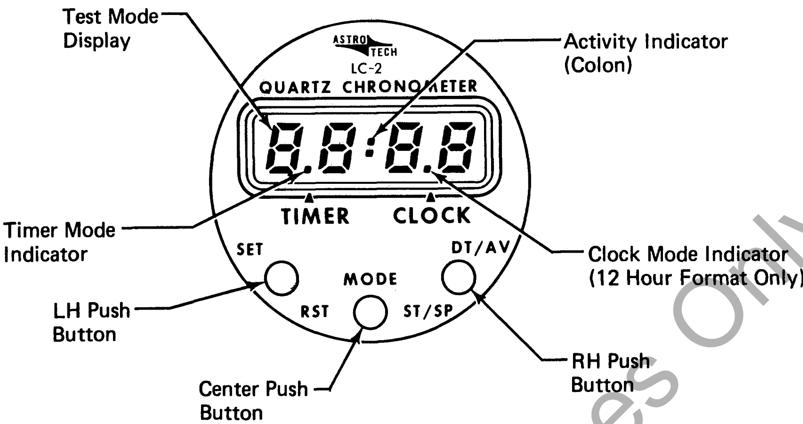


Figure 1. Digital Clock

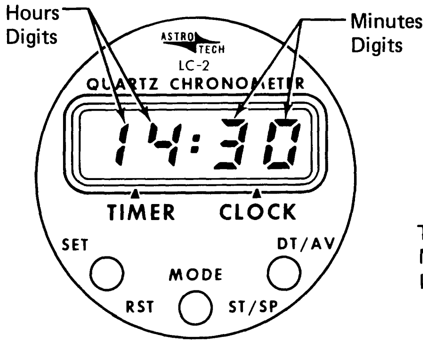
SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

CLOCK AND DATE OPERATION

When operating in the clock mode (see figure 2), the display shows the time of day in hours and minutes while the activity indicator (colon) will blink off for one second each ten seconds to indicate proper functioning. If the RH push button is pressed momentarily, while in the clock mode, the calendar date appears numerically on the display with month of year to the left of the colon and day of the month shown to the right of the colon. The display automatically returns to the clock mode after approximately 1.5 seconds. However, if the RH button is pressed continuously longer than approximately two seconds, the display will return from the date to the clock mode with the activity indicator (colon) blinking altered to show continuously or be blanked completely from the display. Should this occur, simply press the RH button again for two seconds or longer, and correct colon blinking will be restored.

NOTE

The clock mode is set at the factory to operate in the 24-hour format. However, 12-hour format operation may be selected by changing the position of an internal slide switch accessible through a small hole on the bottom of the instrument case. Notice that in the 24-hour format, the clock mode indicator does not appear.

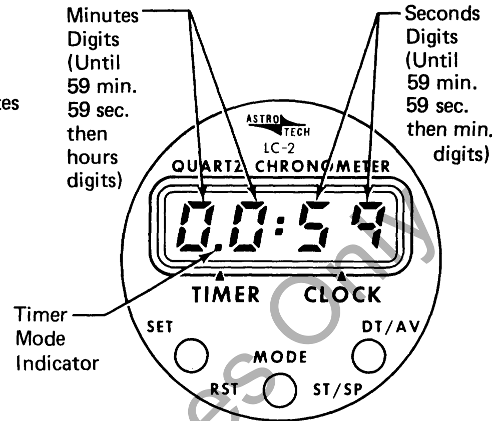


LH Button: Sets date and time of day (when used with RH button).

Center Button: Alternately displays clock or timer status

RH Button: Shows calendar date momentarily; display returns to clock mode after 1.5 seconds.

Figure 2. Clock Mode



LH Button: Resets timer to "zero".

Center Button: Alternately displays clock or timer status

RH Button: Alternately starts and stops timer; timer starts from any previously accumulated total.

Figure 3. Timer Mode

SETTING CORRECT DATE AND TIME

The correct date and time are set while in the clock mode using the LH and RH push buttons as follows: press the LH button once to cause the date to appear with the month flashing. Press the RH button to cause the month to advance at one per second (holding button), or one per push until the correct month appears. Push the LH button again to cause the day of month to appear flashing, then advance as before using RH button until correct day of month appears.

Once set correctly, the date advances automatically at midnight each day until February 29 of each leap year, at which time one day must be added manually.

Pressing the LH button two additional times will cause the time to appear with the hours digits flashing. Using the RH button as before, advance the hour digits to the correct hour as referenced to a known time standard. Another push of the LH button will now cause the minutes digits to flash. Advance the minutes digits to the next whole minute to be reached by the time standard and "hold" the display by pressing the LH button once more. At the exact instant the time standard reaches the value "held" by the display, press the RH button to restart normal clock timing, which will now be synchronized to the time standard.

In some instances, however, it may not be necessary to advance the minutes digits of the clock; for example when changing time zones. In such a case, do not advance the minutes digits while they are flashing. Instead, press the LH button again, and the clock returns to the normal time keeping mode without altering the minutes timing.

TIMER OPERATION

The completely independent 24-hour elapsed timer (see figure 3) is operated as follows: press the center (MODE) push button until the timer mode indicator appears. Reset the display to "zero" by pressing the LH button. Begin timing an event by pressing the RH button. The timer will begin counting in minutes and seconds and the colon (activity indicator) will blink off for 1/10 second each second. When 59 minutes 59 seconds have accumulated, the timer changes to count in hours and minutes up to a maximum of 23 hours, 59 minutes. During the count in hours and minutes, the colon blinks off for one second each ten seconds. To stop timing the event, press the RH button once again and the time shown by the display is "frozen". Successive pushes of the RH button will alternately restart the count from the "held" total or stop the count at a new total. The hold status of the timer can be recognized by lack of colon activity, either continuously on or continuously off. The timer can be reset to "zero" at anytime using the LH button.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the digital clock is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

GROUND SERVICE PLUG RECEPTACLE

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The ground service plug receptacle permits the use of an external power source for cold weather starting and lengthy maintenance work on the electrical and electronic equipment. The receptacle is located behind a door on the left side of the fuselage near the aft edge of the cowling.

NOTE

> If no avionics equipment is to be used or worked on, the avionics power switch should be turned off. If maintenance is required on the avionics equipment, it is advisable to utilize a battery cart external power source to prevent damage to the avionics equipment by transient voltage. Do not crank or start the engine with the avionics power switch turned on.

The battery and external power circuits have been designed to completely eliminate the need to "jumper" across the battery contactor to close it for charging a completely "dead" battery. A special fused circuit in the external power system supplies the needed "jumper" across the contacts so that with a "dead" battery and an external power source applied, turning the master switch ON will close the battery contactor.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following information must be presented in the form of a placard located on the inside of the ground service plug access door.

CAUTION 24 VOLTS D.C. This aircraft is equipped with alternator and a negative ground system. OBSERVE PROPER POLARITY Reverse polarity will damage electrical components.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the ground service plug receptacle is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

Just before connecting an external power source (generator type or battery cart), the avionics power switch should be turned off, and the master switch on.

WARNING

When turning on the master switch, using an external power source, or pulling the propeller through by hand, treat the propeller as if the ignition switch were on. Do not stand, nor allow anyone else to stand, within the arc of the propeller, since a loose or broken wire, or a component malfunction, could cause the propeller to rotate.

The ground service plug receptacle circuit incorporates a polarity reversal protection. Power from the external power source will flow only if the ground service plug is correctly connected to the airplane. If the plug is accidentally connected backwards, no power will flow to the electrical system, thereby preventing any damage to electrical equipment.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the ground service plug receptacle is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

STROBE LIGHT SYSTEM

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The high intensity strobe light system enhances anti-collision protection for the airplane. The system consists of two wing tip-mounted strobe lights (with integral power supplies), a two-position rocker switch labeled STROBE LT on the left switch and control panel, and a 5-amp push-to-reset circuit breaker, also located on the left switch and control panel.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

Strobe lights must be turned off when taxiing in the vicinity of other airplanes, or during night flight through clouds, fog or haze.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when strobe lights are installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

To operate the strobe light system, proceed as follows:

1. Master Switch -- ON.
2. Strobe Light Switch -- ON.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

The installation of strobe lights will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

WINTERIZATION KIT

SECTION 1 GENERAL

The winterization kit consists of two cover plates (with placards) which attach to the air intakes in the cowling nose cap, insulation for the engine crankcase breather line, and a placard to be installed on the instrument panel. This equipment should be installed for operations in temperatures consistently below 20°F (-7°C). Once installed, the crankcase breather insulation is approved for permanent use, regardless of temperature.

SECTION 2 LIMITATIONS

The following information must be presented in the form of placards when the airplane is equipped with a winterization kit.

1. On each nose cap cover plate:

REMOVE WHEN OAT EXCEEDS 20°F

2. On the instrument panel:

WINTERIZATION KIT MUST BE REMOVED WHEN OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE IS ABOVE 20°F.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the winterization kit is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane normal procedures when the winterization kit is installed.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the winterization kit is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

DME

(TYPE 190)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

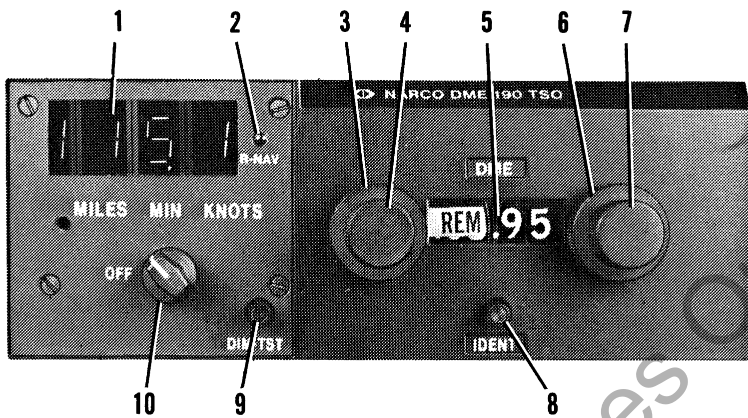
The DME 190 (Distance Measuring Equipment) system consists of a panel mounted 200 channel UHF transmitter-receiver and an externally mounted antenna. The transceiver has a single selector knob that changes the DME's mode of operation to provide the pilot with: distance-to-station, time-to-station, or ground speed readouts. The DME is designed to operate at altitudes up to a maximum of 50,000 feet at ground speeds up to 250 knots and has a maximum slant range of 199.9 nautical miles.

The DME can be channeled independently or by a remote NAV set. When coupled with a remote NAV set, the MHz digits will be covered over by a remote (REM) flag and the DME will utilize the frequency set by the NAV set's channeling knobs. When the DME is not coupled with a remote NAV set, the DME will reflect the channel selected on the DME unit. The transmitter operates in the frequency range of 1041 to 1150 MHz and is paired with 108 to 117.95 MHz to provide automatic DME channeling. The receiver operates in the frequency range of 978 to 1213 MHz and is paired with 108 to 117.95 MHz to provide automatic DME channeling.

All operating controls (except for a SPEAKER/PHONE selector switch mounted on the audio control panel supplied with one or two transmitters, as described in Section 7) for the DME are mounted on the front panel of the DME and are described in Figure 1.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.



1. READOUT WINDOW - Displays function readout in nautical miles (distance-to-station), minutes (time-to-station) or knots (ground speed).

2. R-NAV INDICATOR LAMP - The green R-NAV indicator lamp is provided to indicate the DME is coupled to an R-NAV system. Since this DME is not factory installed with an R-NAV system on Cessna airplanes, the R-NAV indicator lamp should never be illuminated. However, if an R-NAV system is coupled to the DME, and when in R-NAV mode, the R-NAV lamp will light which indicates that the distance readout is the "way point" instead of the DME station. The DME can only give distance (MILES) in R-Nav mode.

3. REMOTE CHANNELING SELECTOR - Two position selector. In the first position, the DME will utilize the frequency set by the DME channeling knobs. In the second position, the MHz digits will utilize the frequency set by the NAV 1 unit's channeling knobs.

4. WHOLE MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR KNOB - Selects operating frequency in 1-MHz steps between 108 and 117 MHz.

5. FREQUENCY INDICATOR - Shows operating frequency selected on the DME or displays remote (REM) flag to indicate DME is operating on a frequency selected by the remote NAV 1 receiver.

6. FRACTIONAL MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR KNOB - Selects operating frequency in 50 kHz steps. This knob has two positions, one for the 0 and one for the 5.

7. FRACTIONAL MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR KNOB - Selects operating frequency in tenths of a Megahertz (0-9).

Figure 1. DME 190 Operating Controls (Sheet 1 of 2)

8. IDENT KNOB - Rotation of this control increases or decreases the volume of the received station's Ident signal. An erratic display, accompanied by the presence of two Ident signals, can result if the airplane is flying in an area where two stations using the same frequency are transmitting.

9. DIM - TST KNOB -

   DIM: Controls the brilliance of the readout lamp's segments. Rotate the control as desired for proper lamp illumination in the function window (The frequency window is dimmed by the aircraft's radio light dimming control).

   TST (PUSH TEST): This control is used to test the illumination of the readout lamps, with or without being tuned to a station. Press the control, a readout of 188 8 should be seen with the mode selector switch in the MIN or KNOTS position. The decimal point along with 188.8 will light in the MILES mode. When the control is released, and had the DME been channeled to a nearby station, the distance to that station will appear. If the station channeled was not in range, a "bar" readout will be seen (--,- or -- -).

10. MODE SELECTOR SWITCH -

   OFF: Turns the DME OFF.

   MILES: Allows a digital readout to appear in the window which represents slant range (in nautical miles) to or from the channeled station.

   MIN: Allows a digital readout (in minutes) to appear in the window that it will take the airplane to travel the distance to the channeled station. This time is only accurate when flying directly TO the station and after the ground speed has stabilized.

   KNOTS: Allows a digital readout (in knots) to appear in the window that is ground speed and is valid only after the stabilization time (approximately 2 minutes) has elapsed when flying directly TO or FROM the channeled station.

Figure 1. DME 190 Operating Controls (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TO OPERATE:

1. Mode Selector Switch -- SELECT desired DME function.
2. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT desired frequency and allow equipment to warm-up at least 2 minutes.

NOTE

If remote channeling selector is set in REM position, select the desired frequency on the #1 Nav radio.

3. PUSH TEST Control -- PUSH and observe reading of 188.8 in function window.
4. DIM Control -- ADJUST.
5. DME SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT as desired.
6. IDENT CONTROL -- ADJUST audio output in speaker or headset.
7. Mode Selector Functions:
   MILES Position -- Distance-to-Station is slant range in nautical miles.
   MIN Position -- Time-to-Station when flying directly to station.
   KNOTS Position --Ground Speed in knots when flying directly to or from station.

CAUTION

After the DME 190 has been turned OFF, do not turn it on again for 5 seconds to allow the protective circuits to reset.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

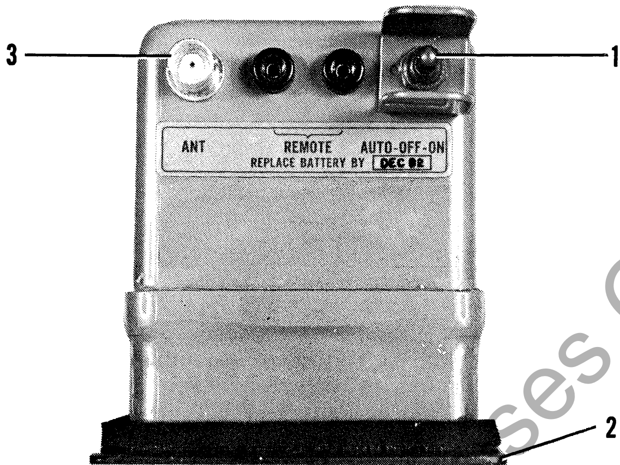
The ELT consists of a self-contained dual-frequency radio transmitter and battery power supply, and is activated by an impact of 5g or more as may be experienced in a crash landing. The ELT emits an omni-directional signal on the international distress frequencies of 121.5 and 243.0 MHz. (Some ELT units in export aircraft transmit only on 121.5 MHz.) General aviation and commercial aircraft, the FAA, and CAP monitor 121.5 MHz, and 243.0 MHz is monitored by the military. Following a crash landing, the ELT will provide line-of-sight transmission up to 100 miles at 10,000 feet. The ELT supplied in domestic aircraft transmits on both distress frequencies simultaneously at 75 mw rated power output for 50 continuous hours in the temperature range of -4°F to +131°F (-20°C to +55°C). The ELT unit in export aircraft transmits on 121.5 MHz at 25 mw rated power output for 50 continuous hours in the temperature range of -4°F to +131°F (-20°C to +55°C).

The ELT is readily identified as a bright orange unit mounted on the right hand side of the baggage compartment wall in the tailcone. To gain access to the unit, remove the cover. The ELT is operated by a control panel at the forward facing end of the unit (see figure 1).

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following information must be presented in the form of a placard located on the baggage compartment wall.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER INSTALLED BEHIND THIS COVER. MUST BE SERVICED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FAR 91.52



1. FUNCTION SELECTOR SWITCH (3-position toggle switch):

   ON - Activates transmitter instantly. Used for test purposes and if "g" switch is inoperative.

   OFF - Deactivates transmitter. Used during shipping, storage and following rescue.

   AUTO - Activates transmitter only when "g" switch receives 5g or more impact.

2. COVER - Removable for access to battery pack.
3. ANTENNA RECEPTACLE - Connects to antenna mounted on top of tailcone.

Figure 1. ELT Control Panel

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

Immediately after a forced landing where emergency assistance is required, the ELT should be utilized as follows.

1. ENSURE ELT ACTIVATION --Turn a radio transceiver ON and select 121.5 MHz. If the ELT can be heard transmitting, it was activated by the "g" switch and is functioning properly. If no emergency tone is audible, gain access to the ELT and place the function selector switch in the ON position.

2. PRIOR TO SIGHTING RESCUE AIRCRAFT -- Conserve airplane battery. Do not activate radio transceiver.

3. AFTER SIGHTING RESCUE AIRCRAFT -- Place ELT function selector switch in the OFF position, preventing radio interference. Attempt contact with rescue aircraft with the radio transceiver set to a frequency of 121.5 MHz. If no contact is established, return the function selector switch to ON immediately.

4. FOLLOWING RESCUE -- Place ELT function selector switch in the OFF position, terminating emergency transmissions.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

As long as the function selector switch remains in the AUTO position, the ELT automatically activates following an impact of 5g or more over a short period of time.

Following a lightning strike, or an exceptionally hard landing, the ELT may activate although no emergency exists. To check your ELT for inadvertent activation, select 121.5 MHz on your radio transceiver and listen for an emergency tone transmission. If the ELT can be heard transmitting, place the function selector switch in the OFF position and the tone should cease. Immediately place the function selector switch in the AUTO position to re-set the ELT for normal operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance data when this equipment is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

FOSTER AREA NAVIGATION SYSTEM
(Type 511)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Foster Area Navigation System (RNAV - Type 511) consists of a 511 Area Nav Computer, a compatible VHF navigation receiver, a DME Adapter Module and DME.

The RNAV 511 is a basic Area Navigation Computer with two thumbwheel programmable waypoints. It performs continuous computation of triangulation problems.

The VOR and DME equipment in the aircraft provides information to the computer on aircraft position relative to the VORTAC station. A waypoint is dialed into one set of waypoint thumbwheels by inserting the RADIAL and DISTANCE of the waypoint (the position the pilot would like to fly over, or to) relative to the VORTAC station. The RNAV 511 computer calculates the Magnetic Bearing (BEARING) and Distance (RANGE NM) from the aircraft to the waypoint repeatedly to provide continual information on WHICH WAY and HOW FAR to the waypoint.

The pilot can monitor BEARING and RANGE on RNAV 511 to fly straight line paths to waypoints up to 200 NM distance from the aircraft position. Waypoints can be precisely dialed into the thumbwheels to 0.1° and 0.1 NM resolution.

The RNAV 511 also provides immediate position orientation relative to the VORTAC (VOR/DME) station being used for computation. Merely press the VOR/DME pushbutton to display the RADIAL and DME distance from the VORTAC.

Another feature of the RNAV 511 is its ability to provide evidence of proper computation in the system. The system can be tested at anytime before flight or while airborne to confirm proper computer operation. An acceptable "test" is evidenced by the active waypoint's RADIAL/DISTANCE being displayed in the BEARING and RANGE windows of the RNAV 511 while TEST pushbutton is pressed. In addition to the "test" feature, diagnostic functions are provided to alert the pilot of why the system is not functional.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

This RNAV installation is not approved for IFR operations and the following information is displayed on individual placards:

1. Adjacent to panel unit when used with the DME 190:

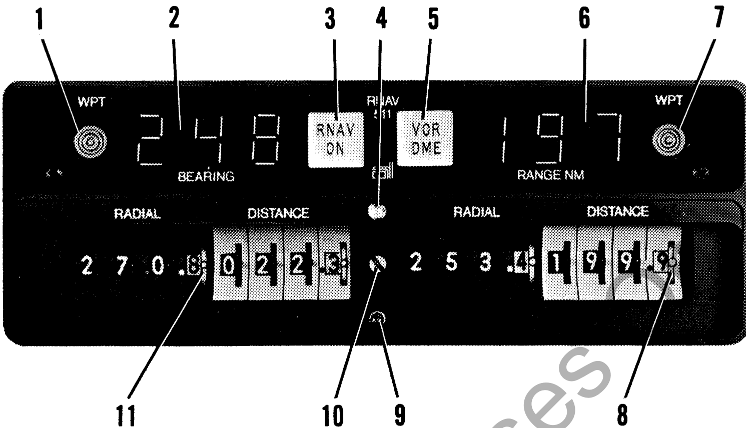
RNAV FOR VFR FLIGHT ONLY TUNE DME & NAV 1 TO SAME VORTAC FOR RNAV OPERATION

2. Adjacent to panel unit when used with the 400 DME:

RNAV FOR VFR FLIGHT ONLY DME MODE SELECTOR ON NAV 1 OR NAV 2 ONLY

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.



1. WAYPOINT PUSHBUTTON (WPT) - Activates the waypoint data dialed into the left side thumbwheels (11). When pressed, the WPT pushbutton lights to indicate which waypoint is "active". The WPT pushbutton light intensity is controlled by a photocell (4).

2. MAGNETIC BEARING DISPLAY READOUT - Digitally displays the magnetic bearing from the airplane to the waypoint. While VOR/DME pushbutton (5) is pressed, the digital display reads RADIAL from the VOR station on which the airplane is presently positioned.

3. RNAV ON/OFF PUSHBUTTON (RNAV ON) - When pressed, RNAV ON light will illuminate and set is turned ON. When pressed again, set will be turned OFF and the RNAV ON light will go out. The pushbutton lighting is automatically dimmed by the photocell (4).

4. PHOTOCELL - Senses ambient cockpit light and controls brightness of pushbuttons (1, 3, 5 & 7) and digital displays (2 & 6).

5. VOR DME PUSHBUTTON - Provides PRESENT POSITION information as to VOR RADIAL and DME DISTANCE digitally in positions (2) and (6) respectively when the pushbutton is pressed.

6. DISTANCE DISPLAY READOUT - Digitally displays airplane DISTANCE TO or FROM the waypoint. Reads by 0.1 NM increments up to 99.9 NM and by 1.0 NM increments over 100 NM. Maximum range readout is 199 NM. While VOR/DME pushbutton (5) is pressed, the digital display reads DME distance to the VORTAC station from the airplane.

Figure 1. Foster Area Nav (Type 511) Computer Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 1 of 2)

7. WAYPOINT PUSHBUTTON (WPT) - Activates the waypoint data dialed into the RIGHT side thumbwheels (8). When pressed, the WPT pushbutton lights to indicate which waypoint is "active". The WPT pushbutton light intensity is controlled by photocell (4).

8. RADIAL AND DISTANCE THUMBWHEELS - Waypoint location (RADIAL and DISTANCE) is dialed into thumbwheels to 0.1° and 0.1 NM resolution. Maximum waypoint offset from the VORTAC is 199.9 NM.

9. TEST PUSHBUTTON - Press to check proper calibration of RNAV 511. If the computer is properly calibrated, the displays (2 & 6) read the "active" WPT RADIAL and DISTANCE as dialed into the thumbwheels. Test may be performed anytime, (during or before flight).

10. LOCKING SCREW - Secures RNAV 511 in dustcover. Turn locking screw counterclockwise several turns to release unit from panel.

11. RADIAL AND DISTANCE THUMBWHEELS - Waypoint location (RADIAL AND DISTANCE) is dialed into thumbwheels to 0.1° and 0.1 NM resolution. Maximum waypoint offset from the VORTAC is 199.9 NM.

Figure 1. Foster Area Nav (Type 511) Computer Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 4
NORMAL OPERATION

VOR/LOC OPERATION

VOR NAVIGATION CIRCUITS VERIFICATION TESTS:

1. See appropriate Nav/Com supplement.

AREA NAVIGATION OPERATING NOTES

1. Proper RNAV operation requires valid VOR and DME inputs to the RNAV system. In certain areas, the ground station antenna patterns and transmitter power may be inadequate to provide valid signals to the RNAV. For this reason, intermittent RNAV signal loss may be experienced enroute.

2. When a waypoint from one VORTAC is displaced over a second VORTAC, interference from the second VORTAC sometimes causes erratic and unusable BEARING and RANGE displays on the RNAV at low altitude.

3. The RNAV BEARING readout (to the waypoint) becomes extremely sensitive and may become unusable within 1 - 1 1/2 miles of the waypoint. Thus, the RANGE readout is the primary means of approximating waypoint passage.

4. Tracking from a waypoint is not recommended since the pilot would have to fly a reciprocal bearing and make error corrections in the opposite direction from flying to a waypoint.

DIAGNOSTIC FUNCTIONS

All RNAV systems are rendered inoperative under certain conditions. The RNAV 511 provides a Flag mode and permits a diagnostic interpretation of why the system is inoperative.

FLAG MODE INDICATIONS:

1. Six "Bars" Appear in the Digital Displays (2 & 6):
   a. PRESS VOR/DME button (5) to determine if the VOR radial signal is absent. If VOR radial signal is absent, bars will change to show as "000" in the BEARING window (2). (One possible cause of this condition could be that the NAV receiver is channeled to a localizer signal.)
   b. Excess RADIAL waypoint address entry (11 or 8) such as 360.1° or 389° -- The computer will not accept this entry.

c. Excess RANGE to Waypoint (6) -- This would be any value over 199 NM. (A check of aircraft position relative to the VORTAC and Waypoint will detect and verify this condition.)

2. Missing DME Signal Display -- This will show as "00.0" in the RANGE NM digital display (6) when the VOR/DME button (2) is held in. The missing DME signal is then the reason for the FLAG condition. (If valid VOR and DME data is displayed, then another cause must be sought.)
3. Temporary Display of Unchanging Random Digits in the BEARING and RANGE Windows (2 & 6) at Time of Initial Turn-ON -- Such a condition is caused by a random interpretation of the micro processor cycle. The RNAV 511 will Flag this malfunction by a complete blanking of all display functions. The pilot can reset the micro processor cycle by turning the RNAV OFF and then ON.

WAYPOINT PROGRAMMING

1. Using a VFR Sectional or other appropriate maps -- DETERMINE distance and bearing for desired waypoint(s) from appropriate VOR/DME stations.
2. VHF Navigation Receiver -- ON (When installed with DME 190, RNAV 511 is connected to the Nav 1 Rcvr. When installed with the 400 DME, RNAV 511 may be connected to either the Nav 1 or Nav 2 Rcvr.) and channeled to the desired VORTAC.
3. DME ON/OFF Switch -- ON.
4. DME Remote Channeling Selector on DME 190 Selector -- SET to REM position on DME 190.
5. DME Mode Selector on 400 DME -- SET TO desired NAV 1 or NAV 2 position on 400 DME.

NOTE

RNAV and HOLD positions on the 400 DME Mode Selector are not used with this installation. RNAV is automatically channeled to the selected Nav receiver.

6. GS/TTS Selector Switch (on 400 DME) -- SET as desired. (Will only display **ground speed** component or **time-to-station** at that speed to the selected VOR --**not the waypoint.)**
7. RADIAL and DISTANCE Thumbwheels -- SET to first waypoint RADIAL and DISTANCE. (Typically, the first waypoint is set into the left side set of thumbwheels.)
8. RADIAL and DISTANCE Thumbwheels -- SET to second waypoint RADIAL and DISTANCE. (Typically, the second waypoint is set into the right set of thumbwheels.)
9. Left WPT Pushbutton Switch -- PUSH in.
   a. First waypoint RADIAL and DISTANCE are placed in unit as a waypoint.

10. RNAV BEARING Readout -- OBSERVE readout for magnetic BEARING to waypoint.
11. RNAV RANGE Readout -- OBSERVE readout of first waypoint distance.
12. TEST Pushbutton -- PRESS and observe that the desired BEARING and RANGE readouts of the waypoint thumbwheel settings are displayed.
    a. BEARING Display Readout -- DISPLAYS readout of first waypoint bearing.
    b. RANGE Display Readout -- DISPLAYS readout of first waypoint distance.
13. DG or HSI -- CONTROL AIRCRAFT as required to maintain desired track to or from waypoint.

NOTE

Due to wind drift, it will be necessary to fly a few degrees plus or minus the calculated BEARING readout in order to maintain the desired BEARING readout on the computer.

14. VOR/DME Pushbutton -- PRESS at anytime to observe the radial and DME distance from the VORTAC associated with the waypoint.

15. Upon Waypoint Passage -- CHECK or SELECT next desired waypoint's VORTAC frequency on the selected Nav receiver and then PRESS next WPT Pushbutton in and repeat steps 9 through 12 to proceed to next waypoint which was dialed in the right set of thumbwheels.

NOTE

Waypoint passage will begin to be reflected on the RNAV BEARING display about 1.5 NM from the waypoint. Waypoint passage will be reflected by a rapid change of BEARING displays. Therefore, the pilot should fly the established inbound predetermined DG heading until waypoint passage has occurred or until the next waypoint is selected.

16. Left Hand RADIAL and DISTANCE Thumbwheels -- SET to next waypoint RADIAL and DISTANCE.

NOTE

As first waypoint is reached, it can be replaced with the next waypoint RADIAL and DISTANCE. Then a new waypoint, if necessary, can be set into the right-hand thumbwheels after the initial right-hand waypoint is passed. This procedure can be followed for as many waypoints as necessary, providing that the desired Nav receiver is selected and the VORTAC frequency has been re-channeled to each VORTAC station.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

HF TRANSCEIVER
(TYPE PT10-A)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The PT10-A HF Transceiver, shown in Figure 1, is a 10-channel AM transmitter-receiver which operates in the frequency range of 2.0 to 18.0 Megahertz. The transceiver is automatically tuned to the operating frequency by a Channel Selector. The operating controls for the unit are mounted on the front panel of the transceiver. The system consists of a transceiver, antenna load box, fixed wire antenna and associated wiring.

The Channel Selector Knob determines the operating frequency of the transmitter and receiver. The frequencies of operation are shown on the frequency chart adjacent to the channel selector.

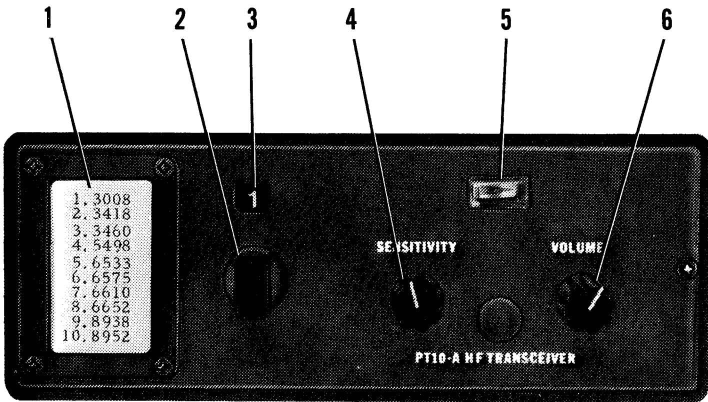
The VOLUME control incorporates the power switch for the transceiver. Clockwise rotation of the volume control turns the set on and increases the volume of audio.

The meter on the face of the transceiver indicates transmitter output.

The system utilizes the airplane microphone, headphone and speaker. Operation and description of the audio control panel used in conjunction with this radio is shown and described in Section 7 of this handbook.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.



1. FREQUENCY CHART - Shows the frequency of the channel in use (frequencies shown may vary and are shown for reference purposes only).
2. CHANNEL SELECTOR - Selects channels 1 thru 10 as listed in the frequency chart.
3. CHANNEL READOUT WINDOW - Displays channel selected in frequency chart.
4. SENSITIVITY CONTROL - Controls the receiver sensitivity for audio gain.
5. ANTENNA TUNING METER - Indicates the energy flowing from the transmitter into the antenna. The optimum power transfer is indicated by the maximum meter reading.
6. ON/OFF VOLUME CONTROL - Turns complete set on and controls volume of audio.

Figure 1. HF Transceiver (Type PT10-A)

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

COMMUNICATIONS TRANSCEIVER OPERATION:

1. XMTR SEL Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT transmitter.
2. SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT desired mode.
3. VOLUME Control -- ON (allow equipment to warm up and adjust audio to comfortable listening level).
4. Frequency Chart -- SELECT desired operating frequency.
5. Channel Selector -- DIAL in frequency selected in step 4.
6. SENSITIVITY Control -- ROTATE clockwise to maximum position.

NOTE

If receiver becomes overloaded by very strong signals, back off SENSITIVITY control until background noise is barely audible.

NOTE

The antenna tuning meter indicates the energy flowing from the airplane's transmitter into the antenna. The optimum power transfer is indicated by the maximum meter reading.

7. Mike Button:
   a. To Transmit -- DEPRESS and SPEAK into microphone.

NOTE

Sidetone is not available on this radio.

   b. To Receive -- RELEASE mike button.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

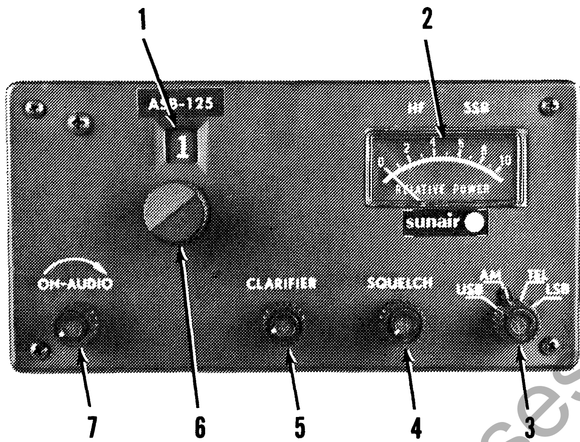
SSB HF TRANSCEIVER
(TYPE ASB-125)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The ASB-125 HF transceiver is an airborne, 10-channel, single side-band (SSB) radio with a compatible amplitude modulated (AM) transmitting-receiving system for long range voice communications in the 2 to 18 MHz frequency range. The system consists of a panel mounted receiver/exciter, a remote mounted power amplifier/power supply, an antenna coupler and an externally mounted, fixed wire, medium/high frequency antenna.

A channel selector knob determines the operating frequency of the transceiver which has predetermined crystals installed to provide the desired operating frequencies. A mode selector control is provided to supply the type of emission required for the channel, either sideband, AM or telephone for public correspondence. An audio knob, clarifier knob and squelch knob are provided to assist in audio operation during receive. In addition to the aforementioned controls, which are all located on the receiver/exciter, a meter is incorporated to provide antenna loading readouts.

The system utilizes the airplane microphone, headphone and speaker. Operation and description of the audio control panel used in conjunction with this radio is shown and described in Section 7 of this handbook.



1. CHANNEL WINDOW - Displays selected channel.

2. RELATIVE POWER METER - Indicates relative radiated power of the power amplifier/antenna system.

3. MODE SELECTOR CONTROL - Selects one of the desired operating modes:
   - USB - Selects upper sideband operation for long range voice communications.
   - AM - Selects compatible AM operation and full AM reception.
   - TEL - Selects upper sideband with reduced carrier, used for public correspondence telephone and ship-to-shore.
   - LSB - (Optional) Selects lower sideband operation (not legal in U.S., Canada and most other countries).

4. SQUELCH CONTROL - Used to adjust signal threshold necessary to activate receiver audio. Clockwise rotation increases background noise (decreases squelch action); counterclockwise rotation decreases background noise.

5. CLARIFIER CONTROL - Used to "clarify" single sideband speech during receive while in USB mode only.

6. CHANNEL SELECTOR CONTROL - Selects desired channel. Also selects AM mode if channel frequency is 2003 kHz, 2182 kHz or 2638 kHz.

7. ON - AUDIO CONTROL - Turns set ON and controls receiver audio gain.

Figure 1. SSB HF Transceiver Operating Controls

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

COMMUNICATIONS TRANSCEIVER OPERATION:

NOTE

The pilot should be aware of the two following radio operational restrictions:

a. For sideband operation in the United States, Canada and various other countries, only the upper sideband may be used. Use of lower sideband is prohibited.
b. Only AM transmissions are permitted on frequencies 2003 kHz, 2182 kHz and 2638 kHz. The selection of these channels will automatically select the AM mode of transmission.

1. XMTR SEL Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT transceiver.
2. SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switches (on audio control panel) -- SELECT desired mode.
3. ON-AUDIO Control -- ON (allow equipment to warm up for 5 minutes for sideband or one minute for AM operation and adjust audio to comfortable listening level).
4. Channel Selector Control -- SELECT desired frequency.
5. Mode Selector Control -- SELECT operating mode.
6. SQUELCH Control -- ADJUST clockwise for normal background noise output, then slowly adjust counterclockwise until the receiver is silent.

7. CLARIFIER Control -- ADJUST when upper single sideband RF signal is being received for maximum clarity.
8. Mike Button:
    a. To Transmit -- DEPRESS and SPEAK into microphone.

NOTE

Sidetone is not available on this radio.

    b. To Receive -- RELEASE mike button.

NOTE

Voice communications are not available in the LSB mode.

NOTE

Lower sideband (LSB) mode is not legal in the U.S., Canada, and most other countries.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA NAVOMATIC 200A AUTOPILOT
(Type AF-295B)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 200A Navomatic is an all electric, single-axis (aileron control) autopilot system that provides added lateral and directional stability. Components are a computer-amplifier, a turn coordinator, an aileron actuator, and a course deviation indicator(s) incorporating a localizer reversed (BC) indicator light

Roll and yaw motions of the airplane are sensed by the turn coordinator gyro. The computer-amplifier electronically computes the necessary correction and signals the actuator to move the ailerons to maintain the airplane in the commanded lateral attitude.

The 200A Navomatic will also capture and track a VOR or localizer course using signals from a VHF navigation receiver.

The operating controls for the Cessna 200A Navomatic are located on the front panel of the computer-amplifier, shown in Figure 1. The primary function pushbuttons (DIR HOLD, NAV CAPT, and NAV TRK), are interlocked so that only one function can be selected at a time. The HI SENS and BACK CRS pushbuttons are not interlocked so that either or both of these functions can be selected at any time.

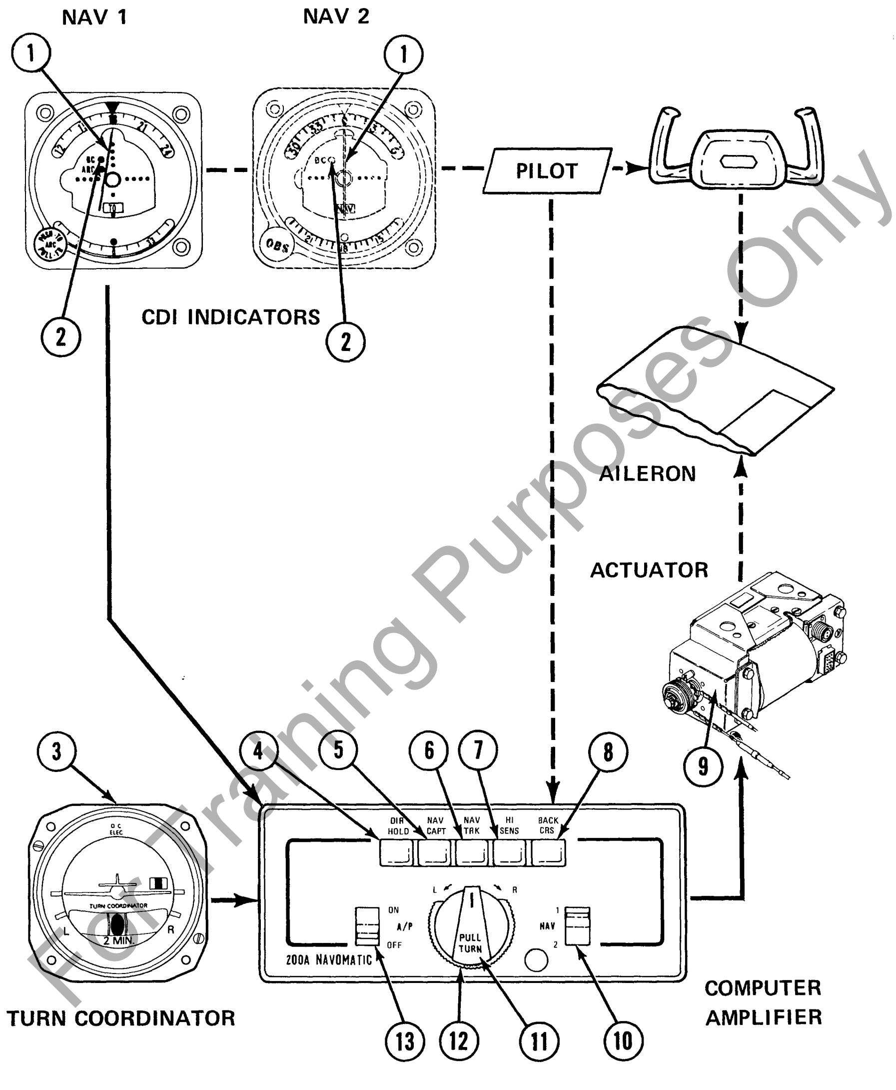


Figure 1. Cessna 200A Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators
(Sheet 1 of 2)

1. COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR - Provides VOR/LOC navigation inputs to autopilot for intercept and tracking modes.

2. LOCALIZER REVERSED INDICATOR LIGHT - Amber light, labeled BC, illuminates when BACK CRS button is pushed in (engaged) and LOC frequency selected. BC light indicates course indicator needle is reversed on selected receiver (when turned to a localizer frequency). This light is located within the CDI indicator.

3. TURN COORDINATOR - Senses roll and yaw for wings leveling and command turn functions.

4. DIR HOLD PUSHBUTTON - Selects direction hold mode. Airplane holds direction it is flying at time button is pushed.

5. NAV CAPT PUSHBUTTON - Selects NAV capture mode. When parallel to desired course, the airplane will turn to a pre-described intercept angle and capture selected VOR or LOC course.

6. NAV TRK PUSHBUTTON - Selects NAV track mode. Airplane tracks selected VOR or LOC course.

7. HI SENS PUSHBUTTON - During NAV CAPT or NAV TRK operation, this high sensitivity setting increases autopilot response to NAV signal to provide more precise operation during localizer approach. In low sensitivity position (pushbutton out), response to NAV signal is dampened for smoother tracking of enroute VOR radials; it also smooths out effect of course scalloping during NAV operation.

8. BACK CRS PUSHBUTTON - Used with LOC operation only. With A/P switch OFF or ON, and when navigation receiver selected by NAV switch is set to a localizer frequency, it reverses normal localizer needle indication (CDI) and causes localizer reversed (BC) light to illuminate. With A/P switch ON, reverses localizer signal to autopilot.

9. ACTUATOR - The torque motor in the actuator causes the ailerons to move in the commanded direction.

10. NAV SWITCH - Selects NAV 1 or NAV 2 navigation receiver.

11. PULL TURN KNOB - When pulled out and centered in detent, airplane will fly wings-level; when turned to the right (R), the airplane will execute a right, standard rate turn; when turned to the left (L), the airplane will execute a left, standard rate turn. When centered in detent and pushed in, the operating mode selected by a pushbutton is engaged.

12. TRIM - Used to trim autopilot to compensate for minor variations in aircraft trim or weight distribution. (For proper operation, the aircraft's rudder trim, if so equipped, must be manually trimmed before the autopilot is engaged.)

13. A/P SWITCH - Turns autopilot ON or OFF.

Figure 1. Cessna 200A Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following autopilot limitation must be adhered to:

BEFORE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO OVERRIDE THE AUTOPILOT:

1. Airplane Control Wheel -- ROTATE as required to override autopilot.

NOTE

The servo may be overpowered at anytime without damage.

TO TURN OFF AUTOPILOT:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.
2. BACK CRS Button -- OFF (see Caution note under Nav Capture).

NOTE

Periodically verify operation of amber warning light(s), labeled BC on CDI(s), by engaging BACK CRS button with a LOC frequency selected.

INFLIGHT WINGS LEVELING:

1. Airplane Rudder Trim -- ADJUST for zero slip ("Ball" centered on Turn Coordinator).
2. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PULL out.
3. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- ON.
4. Autopilot TRIM Control -- ADJUST for zero turn rate (wings level indication on Turn Coordinator).

NOTE

For optimum performance in airplanes equipped as floatplanes, use autopilot only in cruise flight or in approach configuration with flaps down no more than 10° and airspeed no lower than 75 KIAS on 172 and R172 Series Models or 90 KIAS on 180, 185, U206 and TU206 Series Models.

COMMAND TURNS:

1. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER, PULL out and ROTATE.

DIRECTION HOLD:

1. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PULL out.
2. Autopilot TRIM Control -- ADJUST for zero turn rate.
3. Airplane Rudder Trim -- ADJUST for zero slip ("Ball" centered).
4. DIR HOLD Button -- PUSH.
5. PULL-TURN Knob -- PUSH in detent position when airplane is on desired heading.
6. Autopilot TRIM Control -- READJUST for zero turn rate.

NAV CAPTURE (VOR/LOC):

1. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PULL out.
2. NAV 1-2 Selector Switch -- SELECT desired VOR receiver.
3. Nav Receiver OBS or ARC Knob -- SET desired VOR course (if tracking omni).

NOTE

Optional ARC knob should be in center position and ARC amber warning light should be off.

4. NAV CAPT Button -- PUSH.
5. HI SENS Button -- PUSH for localizer and "close-in" omni intercepts.

6. BACK CRS Button -- PUSH only if intercepting localizer front course outbound or back course inbound.

CAUTION

With BACK CRS button pushed in and localizer frequency selected, the CDI on selected nav radio will be reversed even when the autopilot switch is OFF.

7. PULL-TURN Knob -- Turn airplane parallel to desired course.

NOTE

Airplane must be turned until heading is within ±5° of desired course.

8. PULL TURN Knob -- CENTER and PUSH in. The airplane should then turn toward desired course at 45° ±10° intercept angle (if the CDI needle is in full deflection)

NOTE

If more than 15 miles from the station or more than 3 minutes from intercept, use a manual intercept procedure.

NAV TRACKING (VOR/LOC):

1. NAV TRK Button -- PUSH when CDI centers and airplane is within ±5° of course heading.
2. HI SENS BUTTON -- DISENGAGE for enroute omni tracking (leave ENGAGED for localizer).
3. Autopilot TRIM Control -- READJUST as required to maintain track.

NOTE

Optional ARC function, if installed, should not be used for autopilot operation. If airplane should deviate off course, pull out PULL TURN knob and readjust airplane rudder trim for straight flight on the Turn Coordinator. Push in PULL TURN knob to reintercept course. If deviation persists, progressively make slight adjustments of autopilot TRIM control towards the course as required to maintain track.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA 300 ADF

(Type R-546E)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 300 ADF is a panel-mounted, digitally tuned automatic direction finder. It is designed to provide continuous 1 kHz digital tuning in the frequency range of 200 kHz to 1,699 kHz and eliminates the need for mechanical band switching. The system is comprised of a receiver, a bearing indicator, a loop antenna, and a sense antenna. Operating controls and displays for the Cessna 300 ADF are shown and described in Figure 1. The audio system used in conjunction with this radio for speaker-phone selection is shown and described in Section 7 of this handbook.

The Cessna 300 ADF can be used for position plotting and homing procedures, and for aural reception of amplitude-modulated (AM) signals.

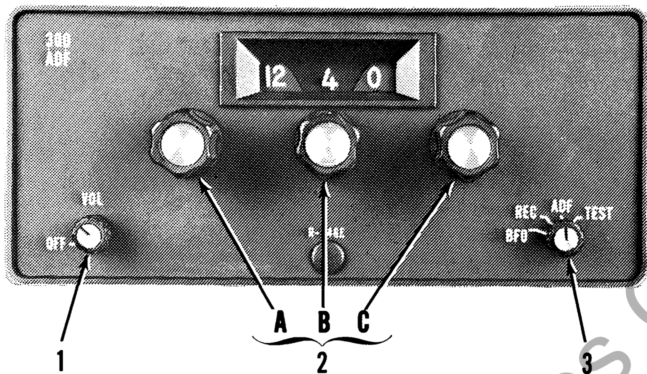
With the function selector knob at ADF, the Cessna 300 ADF provides a visual indication, on the bearing indicator, of the bearing to the transmitting station relative to the nose of the airplane. This is done by combining signals from the sense antenna with signals from the loop antenna.

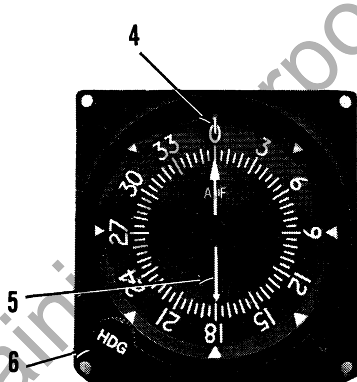
With the function selector knob at REC, the Cessna 300 ADF uses only the sense antenna and operates as a conventional low-frequency receiver.

The Cessna 300 ADF is designed to receive transmission from the following radio facilities: commercial AM broadcast stations, low-frequency range stations, non-directional radio beacons, ILS compass locators.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.





1. OFF/VOL CONTROL - Controls primary power and audio output level. Clockwise rotation from OFF position applies primary power to receiver; further clockwise rotation increases audio level.

2. FREQUENCY SELECTORS - Knob (A) selects 100-kHz increments of receiver frequency, knob (B) selects 10-kHz increments, and knob (C) selects 1 kHz increments.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 ADF Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 1 of 2)

3. FUNCTION SWITCH:

BFO: Selects operation as communication receiver using only sense antenna and activates 1000-Hz tone beat frequency oscillator to permit coded identifier of stations transmitting keyed CW signals (Morse Code) to be heard.

REC: Selects operation as standard communication receiver using only sense antenna.

ADF: Set operates as automatic direction finder using loop and sense antennas.

TEST: Momentary-on position used during ADF operation to test bearing reliability. When held in TEST position, slews indicator pointer clockwise; when released, if bearing is reliable, pointer returns to original bearing position.

4. INDEX (ROTATABLE CARD) - Indicates relative, magnetic, or true heading of aircraft, as selected by HDG control.

5. POINTER - Indicates station bearing in degrees of azimuth, relative to the nose of the aircraft. When heading control is adjusted, indicates relative, magnetic, or true bearing of radio signal.

6. HEADING CARD CONTROL (HDG) - Rotates card to set in relative, magnetic, or true bearing information.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TO OPERATE AS A COMMUNICATIONS RECEIVER ONLY:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. Function Selector Knob -- REC.
3. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT operating frequency.
4. ADF SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT speaker or phone position as desired.
5. VOL Control -- ADJUST to desired listening level.

TO OPERATE AS AN AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT operating frequency.
3. ADF SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT AS DESIRED.
4. Function Selector Knob -- ADF position and note relative bearing on indicator.

TO TEST RELIABILITY OF AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER:

1. Function Selector Knob -- ADF position and note relative bearing on indicator.
2. Function Selector Knob -- TEST position and observe that pointer moves away from relative bearing at least 10 to 20 degrees.
3. Function Selector Knob -- ADF position and observe that pointer returns to same relative bearing as in step (1).

TO OPERATE BFO:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. Function Selector Knob -- BFO.
3. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT operating frequency.
4. ADF SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT speaker or phone position as desired.

5. VOL Control -- ADJUST to desired listening level.

NOTE

A 1000-Hz tone is heard in the audio output when a CW signal (Morse Code) is tuned in properly.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA 300 NAV/COM
(720-Channel - Type RT-385A)

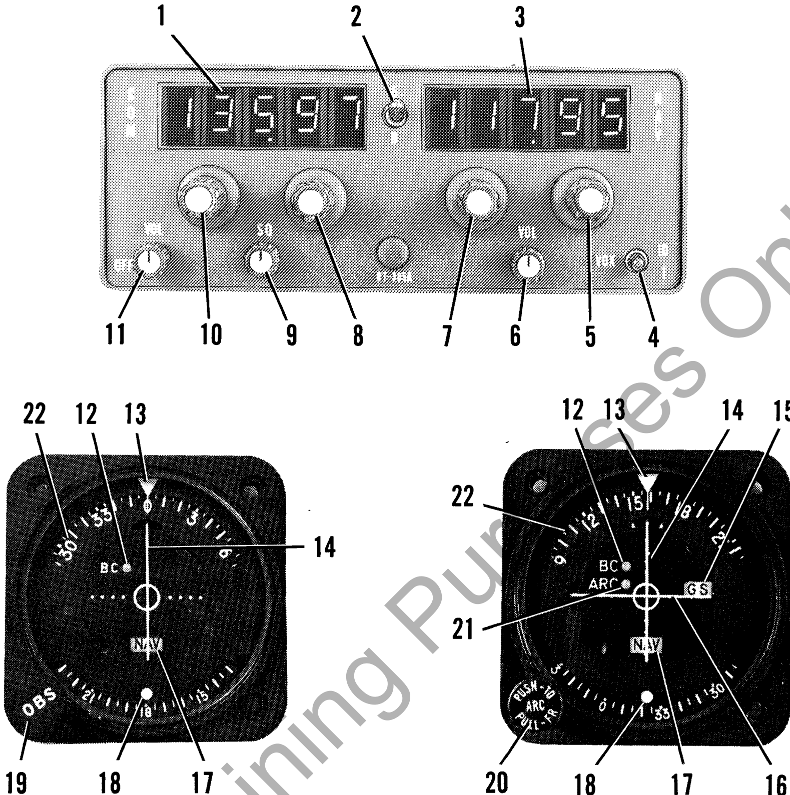
SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 300 Nav/Com (Type RT-385A), shown in figure 1, consists of a panel-mounted receiver-transmitter and a single or dual-pointer remote course deviation indicator.

The set includes a 720-channel VHF communications receiver-transmitter and a 200-channel VHF navigation receiver, both of which may be operated simultaneously. The communications receiver-transmitter receives and transmits signals between 118.000 and 135.975 MHz in 25-kHz steps. The navigation receiver receives omni and localizer signals between 108.00 and 117.95 MHz in 50-kHz steps. The circuits required to interpret the omni and localizer signals are located in the course deviation indicator. Both the communications and navigation operating frequencies are digitally displayed by incandescent readouts on the front panel of the Nav/Com.

A DME receiver-transmitter or a glide slope receiver, or both, may be interconnected with the Nav/Com set for automatic selection of the associated DME or glide slope frequency. When a VOR frequency is selected on the Nav/Com, associated VORTAC or VOR-DME station frequency will also be selected automatically; likewise, if a localizer frequency is selected, the associated glide slope will be selected automatically.

The course deviation indicator includes either a single-pointer and related NAV flag for VOR/LOC indication only, or dual pointers and related NAV and GS flags for both VOR/LOC and glide slope indications. Both types of course deviation indicators incorporate a back-course lamp (BC) which lights when optional back course (reversed sense) operation is selected. Both types may be provided with Automatic Radial Centering which, depending on how it is selected, will automatically indicate the bearing TO or FROM the VOR station.



1. COMMUNICATION OPERATING FREQUENCY READOUT (Third-decimal-place is shown by the position of the "5-0" switch).

2. 5-0 SWITCH - Part of Com Receiver-Transmitter Fractional MHz Frequency Selector. In "5" position, enables Com frequency readout to display and Com Fractional MHz Selector to select frequency in .05-MHz steps between .025 and .975 MHz. In "0" position, enables COM frequency readout to display and Com Fractional MHz Selector to select frequency in .05-MHz steps between .000 and .950 MHz.

NOTE

The "5" or "0" may be read as the third decimal digit, which is not displayed in the Com fractional frequency display.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Nav/Com (Type RT-385A), Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 1 of 3)

3. NAVIGATION OPERATING FREQUENCY READOUT.

4. ID-VOX-T SWITCH - With VOR or LOC station selected, in ID position, station identifier signal is audible; in VOX (Voice) position, identifier signal is suppressed; in T (Momentary On) position, the VOR navigational self-test function is selected.

5. NAVIGATION RECEIVER FRACTIONAL MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR - Selects Nav frequency in .05-MHz steps between .00 and .95 MHz; simultaneously selects paired glide slope frequency and DME channel.

6. NAV VOL CONTROL - Adjusts volume of navigation receiver audio.

7. NAVIGATION RECEIVER MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR - Selects NAV frequency in 1-MHz steps between 108 and 117 MHz; simultaneously selects paired glide slope frequency and DME channel.

8. COMMUNICATION RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER FRACTIONAL MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR - Depending on position of 5-0 switch, selects COM frequency in .05-MHz steps between .000 and .975 MHz. The 5-0 switch identifies the last digit as either 5 or 0.

9. SQUELCH CONTROL - Used to adjust signal threshold necessary to activate COM receiver audio. Clockwise rotation increases background noise (decreases squelch action); counterclockwise rotation decreases background noise.

10. COMMUNICATION RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER MEGAHERTZ SELECTOR - Selects COM frequency in 1-MHz steps between 118 and 135 MHz.

11. COM OFF-VOL CONTROL - Combination on/off switch and volume control; turns on NAV/COM set and controls volume of communications receiver audio.

12. BC LAMP - Amber light illuminates when an autopilot's back-course (reverse sense) function is engaged; indicates course deviation pointer is reversed on selected receiver when tuned to a localizer frequency. Light dimming is only available when installed with an audio control panel incorporating the annunciator lights DAY/NITE selector switch.

13. COURSE INDEX - Indicates selected VOR course.

14. COURSE DEVIATION POINTER - Indicates course deviation from selected omni course or localizer centerline.

15. GLIDE SLOPE "GS" FLAG - When visible, red GS flag indicates unreliable glide slope signal or improperly operating equipment. Flag disappears when a reliable glide slope signal is being received.

16. GLIDE SLOPE DEVIATION POINTER - Indicates deviation from ILS glide slope.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Nav/Com (Type RT-385A), Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 3 of 3)

17. NAV/TO-FROM INDICATOR - Operates only with a VOR or localizer signal. Red NAV position (Flag) indicates unusable signal. With usable VOR signal, indicates whether selected course is TO or FROM station. With usable localizer signal, shows TO.

18. RECIPROCAL COURSE INDEX - Indicates reciprocal of selected VOR course.

19. OMNI BEARING SELECTOR (OBS) - Rotates course card to select desired course.

20. AUTOMATIC RADIAL CENTERING (ARC-PUSH-TO/PULL-FR) SELECTOR - In center detent, functions as conventional OBS. Pushed to inner (Momentary On) position, turns OBS course card to center course deviation pointer with a TO flag, then returns to conventional OBS selection. Pulled to outer detent, continuously drives OBS course card to indicate bearing from VOR station, keeping course deviation pointer centered, with a FROM flag. ARC function will not operate on localizer frequencies.

21. AUTOMATIC RADIAL CENTERING (ARC) LAMP - Amber light illuminates when Automatic Radial Centering is in use. Light dimming is only available when installed with an audio control panel incorporating the annunciator lights DAY/NITE selector switch.

22. COURSE CARD - Indicates selected VOR course under course index.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Nav/Com (Type RT-385A), Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2 of 3)

The Cessna 300 Nav/Com incorporates a variable threshold automatic squelch. With this squelch system, you set the threshold level for automatic operation - the further clockwise the lower the threshold - or the more sensitive the set. When the signal is above this level, it is heard even if the noise is very close to the signal. Below this level, the squelch is fully automatic so when the background noise is very low, very weak signals (that are above the noise) are let through. For normal operation of the squelch circuit, just turn the squelch clockwise until noise is heard - then back off slightly until it is quiet, and you will have automatic squelch with the lowest practical threshold. This adjustment should be rechecked periodically during each flight to assure optimum reception.

All controls for the Nav/Com, except the standard omni bearing selector (OBS) knob or the optional automatic radial centering (ARC) knob located on the course deviation indicator, are mounted on the front panel of the receiver-transmitter. Operation and description of the audio control panels used in conjunction with this radio are shown and described in Section 7 of this handbook.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed. However, if the frequency readouts fail, the radio will remain operational on the last frequency selected. The frequency control should not be moved due to the difficulty of obtaining a known frequency under this condition.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

COMMUNICATION RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER OPERATION:

1. COM OFF/VOL Control -- TURN ON; adjust to desired audio level.
2. XMTR SEL Switch (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired Nav/Com Radio.
3. SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switches (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode.
4. 5-0 Fractional MHz Selector Switch -- SELECT desired operating frequency (does not affect navigation frequencies).
5. COM Frequency Selector Switch -- SELECT desired operating frequency.
6. SQ Control -- ROTATE counterclockwise to just eliminate background noise. Adjustment should be checked periodically to assure optimum reception.
7. Mike Button:
   a. To Transmit -- DEPRESS and SPEAK into microphone.

   NOTE

   Sidetone may be selected by placing the AUTO selector switch (on audio control panel) in either the SPEAKER or PHONE position. Sidetone may be eliminated by placing the AUTO selector switch in the OFF position. Adjustment of sidetone on audio control panels supplied with three transmitters cannot be accomplished externally. However, audio control panels supplied with two or less transmitters have sidetone adjustment pots that are accessible through the front of the audio control panel with a small, screwdriver.

   b. To Receive -- RELEASE mike button.

NAVIGATION OPERATION:

NOTE

The pilot should be aware that on many Cessna airplanes equipped with the windshield mounted glide slope antenna, pilots should avoid use of 2700 ± 100 RPM on airplanes equipped with a two-bladed propeller or 1800 ± 100 RPM on airplanes equipped with a three-bladed propeller during ILS approaches to avoid oscillations of the glide slope deviation pointer caused by propeller interference.

1. COM OFF/VOL Control -- TURN ON.
2. SPEAKER/PHONE Selector Switches (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode.
3. NAV Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT desired operating frequency.
4. NAV VOL -- ADJUST to desired audio level.
5. ID-VOX-T Switch:
   a. To Identify Station -- SET to ID to hear navigation station identifier signal.
   b. To Filter Out Station Identifier Signal -- SET to VOX to include filter in audio circuit.
6. ARC PUSH-TO/PULL-FROM Knob (If Applicable):
   a. To Use As Conventional OBS -- PLACE in center detent and select desired course.
   b. To Obtain Bearing TO VOR Station -- PUSH (ARC/PUSH-TO) knob to inner (momentary on) position.

NOTE

ARC lamp will illuminate amber while the course card is moving to center with the course deviation pointer. After alignment has been achieved to reflect bearing to VOR, automatic radial centering will automatically shut down, causing the ARC lamp to go out.

   c. To Obtain Continuous Bearing FROM VOR Station -- PULL (ARC/PULL-FR) knob to outer detent.

NOTE

ARC lamp will illuminate amber, OBS course card will turn to center the course deviation pointer with a FROM flag to indicate bearing from VOR station.

7. OBS Knob (If Applicable) -- SELECT desired course.

VOR SELF-TEST OPERATION:

1. COM OFF/VOL Control -- TURN ON.
2. NAV Frequency Selector Switches -- SELECT usable VOR station signal.
3. OBS Knob -- SET for 0° course at course index; course deviation pointer centers or deflects left or right, depending on bearing of signal; NAV/TO-FROM indicator shows TO or FROM.
4. ID/VOX/T Switch -- PRESS to T and HOLD at T; course deviation pointer centers and NAV/TO-FROM indicator shows FROM.
5. OBS Knob -- TURN to displace course approximately 10° to either side of 0° (while holding ID/VOX/T to T). Course deviation pointer deflects full scale in direction corresponding to course displacement. NAV/TO-FROM indicator shows FROM.
6. ID/VOX/T Switch -- RELEASE for normal operation.

NOTE

This test does not fulfill the requirements of FAR 91.25.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

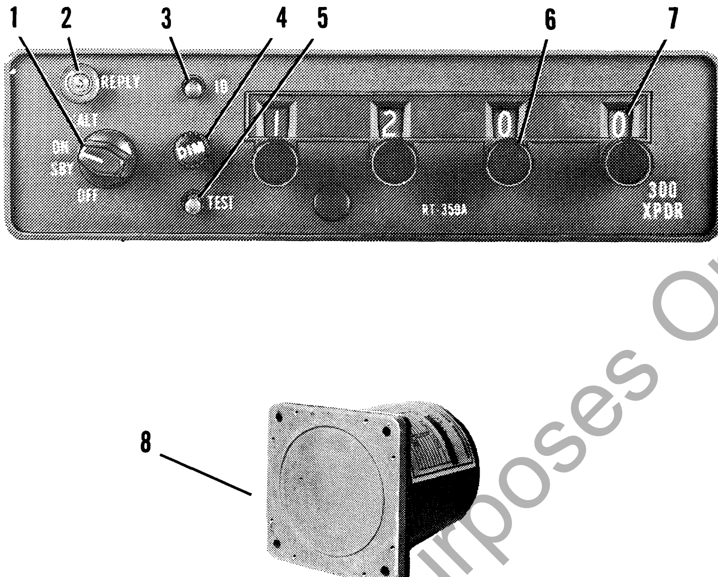
SUPPLEMENT
CESSNA 300 TRANSPONDER (Type RT-359A) AND OPTIONAL ALTITUDE ENCODER (BLIND)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 300 Transponder (Type RT-359A), shown in Figure 1, is the airborne component of an Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). The transponder enables the ATC ground controller to "see" and identify the aircraft, while in flight, on the control center's radarscope more readily.

The Cessna 300 Transponder system consists of a panel-mounted unit and an externally mounted antenna. The transponder receives interrogation pulse signals on 1030 MHz and transmits pulse-train reply signals on 1090 MHz. The transponder is capable of replying to Mode A (aircraft identification) and also Mode C (altitude reporting) when coupled to an optional altitude encoder system. The transponder is capable of replying on both modes of interrogation on a selective reply basis on any of 4,096 information code selections. The optional altitude encoder system (not part of a standard 300 Transponder system) required for Mode C (altitude reporting) operation consists of a completely independent remote-mounted digitizer that is connected to the static system and supplies encoded altitude information to the transponder. When the altitude encoder system is coupled to the 300 Transponder system, altitude reporting capabilities are available in 100-foot increments between -1000 and +20,000 feet.

All Cessna 300 Transponder operating controls are located on the front panel of the unit. Functions of the operating controls are described in Figure 1.



1. FUNCTION SWITCH - Controls application of power and selects transponder operating mode as follows:

   OFF - Turns set off.
   SBY - Turns set on for equipment warm-up or standby power.
   ON - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses.
   ALT - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit either Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses or Mode C (altitude reporting) pulses selected automatically by the interrogating signal.

2. REPLY LAMP - Lamp flashes to indicate transmission of reply pulses; glows steadily to indicate transmission of IDENT pulse or satisfactory self-test operation. (Reply lamp will also glow steadily during initial warm-up period.)

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Transponder and Altitude Encoder (Blind)
(Sheet 1 of 2)

3. IDENT (ID) SWITCH - When depressed, selects special pulse identifier to be transmitted with transponder reply to effect immediate identification of aircraft on ground controller's display. (Reply lamp will glow steadily during duration of IDENT pulse transmission.)

4. DIMMER (DIM) CONTROL - Allows pilot to control brilliance of reply lamp.

5. SELF-TEST (TST) SWITCH - When depressed, causes transponder to generate a self-interrogating signal to provide a check of transponder operation. (Reply lamp will glow steadily to verify self-test operation.)

6. REPLY-CODE SELECTOR KNOBS (4) - Select assigned Mode A reply code.

7. REPLY-CODE INDICATORS (4) - Display selected Mode A reply code.

8. REMOTE-MOUNTED DIGITIZER - Provides an altitude reporting code range of -1000 feet up to the airplane's maximum service ceiling.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Transponder and Altitude Encoder (Blind) (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the following information must be displayed in the form of a placard located near the altimeter.

ALTITUDE ENCODER EQUIPPED

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO TRANSMIT AN EMERGENCY SIGNAL:

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT 7700 operating code.

TO TRANSMIT A SIGNAL REPRESENTING LOSS OF ALL COMMUNICATIONS (WHEN IN A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT):

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT 7700 operating code for 1 minute; then SELECT 7600 operating code for 15 minutes and then REPEAT this procedure at same intervals for remainder of flight.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKEOFF:

1. Function Switch -- SBY.

TO TRANSMIT MODE A (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT assigned code.

2. Function Switch -- ON.
3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

NOTE

During normal operation with function switch in ON position, reply lamp flashes indicating transponder replies to interrogations.

4. ID Button -- DEPRESS momentarily when instructed by ground controller to "squawk IDENT" (reply lamp will glow steadily, indicating IDENT operation).

TO TRANSMIT MODE C (ALTITUDE REPORTING) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT assigned code.
2. Function Switch -- ALT.

NOTE

When directed by ground controller to "stop altitude squawk", turn Function Switch to ON for Mode A operation only.

NOTE

Pressure altitude is transmitted by the transponder for altitude squawk and conversion to indicated altitude is done in ATC computers. Altitude squawked will only agree with indicated altitude when the local altimeter setting in use by the ground controller is set in the aircraft altimeter.

3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

TO SELF-TEST TRANSPONDER OPERATION:

1. Function Switch -- SBY and wait 30 seconds for equipment to warm-up.
2. Function Switch -- ON or ALT.
3. TST Button -- DEPRESS (reply lamp should light brightly regardless of DIM control setting).
4. TST Button -- Release for normal operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

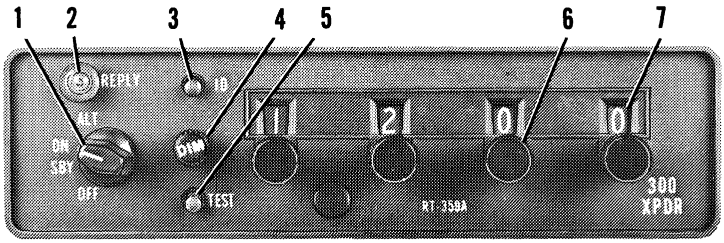
CESSNA 300 TRANSPONDER (Type RT-359A) AND OPTIONAL ENCODING ALTIMETER (Type EA-401A)

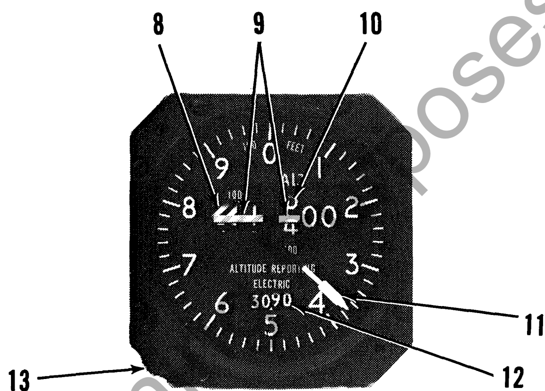
SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 300 Transponder (Type RT-359A), shown in Figure 1, is the airborne component of an Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). The transponder enables the ATC ground controller to "see" and identify the aircraft, while in flight, on the control center's radarscope more readily.

The Cessna 300 Transponder consists of a panel-mounted unit and an externally mounted antenna. The transponder receives interrogating pulse signals on 1030 MHz and transmits coded pulse-train reply signals on 1090 MHz. It is capable of replying to Mode A (aircraft identification) and Mode C (altitude reporting) interrogations on a selective reply basis on any of 4,096 information code selections. When an optional panel-mounted EA-401A Encoding Altimeter (not part of a standard 300 Transponder system) is included in the avionic configuration, the transponder can provide altitude reporting in 100-foot increments between -1000 and +35,000 feet.

All Cessna 300 Transponder operating controls, with the exception of the optional altitude encoder's altimeter setting knob, are located on the front panel of the unit. The altimeter setting knob is located on the encoding altimeter. Functions of the operating controls are described in Figure 1.





1. FUNCTION SWITCH - Controls application of power and selects transponder operating mode as follows:

   OFF - Turns set off.
   SBY - Turns set on for equipment warm-up.
   ON - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses.
   ALT - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit either Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses or Mode C (altitude reporting) pulses selected automatically by the interrogating signal.

2. REPLY LAMP - Lamp flashes to indicate transmission of reply pulses; glows steadily to indicate transmission of IDENT pulse or satisfactory self-test operation. (Reply Lamp will also glow steadily during initial warm-up period.)

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Transponder and Encoding Altimeter (Sheet 1 of 2)

3. IDENT (ID) SWITCH - When depressed, selects special pulse identifier to be transmitted with transponder reply to effect immediate identification of aircraft on ground controller's display. (Reply Lamp will glow steadily during duration of IDENT pulse transmission.)

4. DIMMER (DIM) CONTROL - Allows pilot to control brilliance of reply lamp.

5. SELF-TEST (TST) SWITCH - When depressed, causes transponder to generate a self-interrogating signal to provide a check of transponder operation. (Reply Lamp will glow steadily to verify self test operation.)

6. REPLY-CODE SELECTOR KNOBS (4) - Select assigned Mode A reply code.

7. REPLY-CODE INDICATORS (4) - Display selected Mode A reply code.

8. 1000-FOOT DRUM TYPE INDICATOR - Provides digital altitude readout in 1000-foot increments between -1000 feet and +35,000 feet. When altitude is below 10,000 feet, a diagonally striped flag appears in the 10,000 foot window.

9. OFF INDICATOR WARNING FLAG - Flag appears across altitude readout when power is removed from the altimeter to indicate that readout is not reliable.

10. 100-FOOT DRUM TYPE INDICATOR - Provides digital altitude readout in 100-foot increments between 0 feet and 1000 feet.

11. 20-FOOT INDICATOR NEEDLE - Indicates altitude in 20-foot increments between 0 feet and 1000 feet.

12. ALTIMETER SETTING SCALE - DRUM TYPE - Indicates selected altimeter setting in the range of 27.9 to 31.0 inches of mercury on the standard altimeter or 950 to 1050 millibars on the optional altimeter.

13. ALTIMETER SETTING KNOB - Dials in desired altimeter setting in the range of 27.9 to 31.0 inches of mercury on the standard altimeter or 950 to 1050 millibars on the optional altimeter.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the encoding altimeter used in this installation does have a limitation that requires a standard barometric altimeter to be installed as a back-up altimeter.

Figure 1. Cessna 300 Transponder and Encoding Altimeter (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO TRANSMIT AN EMERGENCY SIGNAL:

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT 7700 operating code.

TO TRANSMIT A SIGNAL REPRESENTING LOSS OF ALL COMMUNICATIONS (WHEN IN A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT):

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT 7700 operating code for 1 minute; then SELECT 7600 operating code for 15 minutes and then REPEAT this procedure at same intervals for remainder of flight.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKEOFF:

1. Function Switch -- SBY.

TO TRANSMIT MODE A (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT assigned code.
2. Function Switch -- ON.
3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

NOTE

During normal operation with function switch in ON position, reply lamp flashes indicating transponder replies to interrogations.

4. ID Button -- DEPRESS momentarily when instructed by ground controller to "squawk IDENT" (reply lamp will glow steadily, indicating IDENT operation).

TO TRANSMIT MODE C (ALTITUDE REPORTING) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Off Indicator Warning Flag -- VERIFY that flag is out of view on encoding altimeter.
2. Altitude Encoder Altimeter Setting Knob -- SET IN assigned local altimeter setting.
3. Reply-Code Selector Knobs -- SELECT assigned code.
4. Function Switch -- ALT.

NOTE

When directed by ground controller to "stop altitude squawk", turn Function Switch to ON for Mode A operation only.

NOTE

Pressure altitude is transmitted by the transponder for altitude squawk and conversion to indicated altitude is accomplished in ATC computers. Altitude squawked will only agree with indicated altitude when the local altimeter setting in use by the ground controller is set in the encoding altimeter.

5. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

TO SELF-TEST TRANSPONDER OPERATION:

1. Function Switch -- SBY and wait 30 seconds for equipment to warm-up.
2. Function Switch -- ON or ALT.
3. TST Button -- DEPRESS and HOLD (reply lamp should light with full brilliance regardless of DIM control setting).
4. TST Button -- Release for normal operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA NAVOMATIC 300A AUTOPILOT (Type AF-395A)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 300A Navomatic is an all electric, single-axis (aileron control) autopilot system that provides added lateral and directional stability. Components are a computer-amplifier, a turn coordinator, a directional gyro, an aileron actuator and a course deviation indicator(s) incorporating a localizer reversed (BC) indicator light.

Roll and yaw motions of the airplane are sensed by the turn coordinator gyro. Deviations from the selected heading are sensed by the directional gyro. The computer-amplifier electronically computes the necessary correction and signals the actuator to move the ailerons to maintain the airplane in the commanded lateral attitude or heading.

The 300A Navomatic will also intercept and track a VOR or localizer course using signals from a VHF navigation receiver.

The operating controls for the Cessna 300A Navomatic are located on the front panel of the computer-amplifier and on the directional gyro, shown in Figure 1. The primary function pushbuttons (HDG SEL, NAV INT, and NAV TRK), are interlocked so that only one function can be selected at a time. The HI SENS and BACK CRS pushbuttons are not interlocked so that either or both of these functions can be selected at any time.

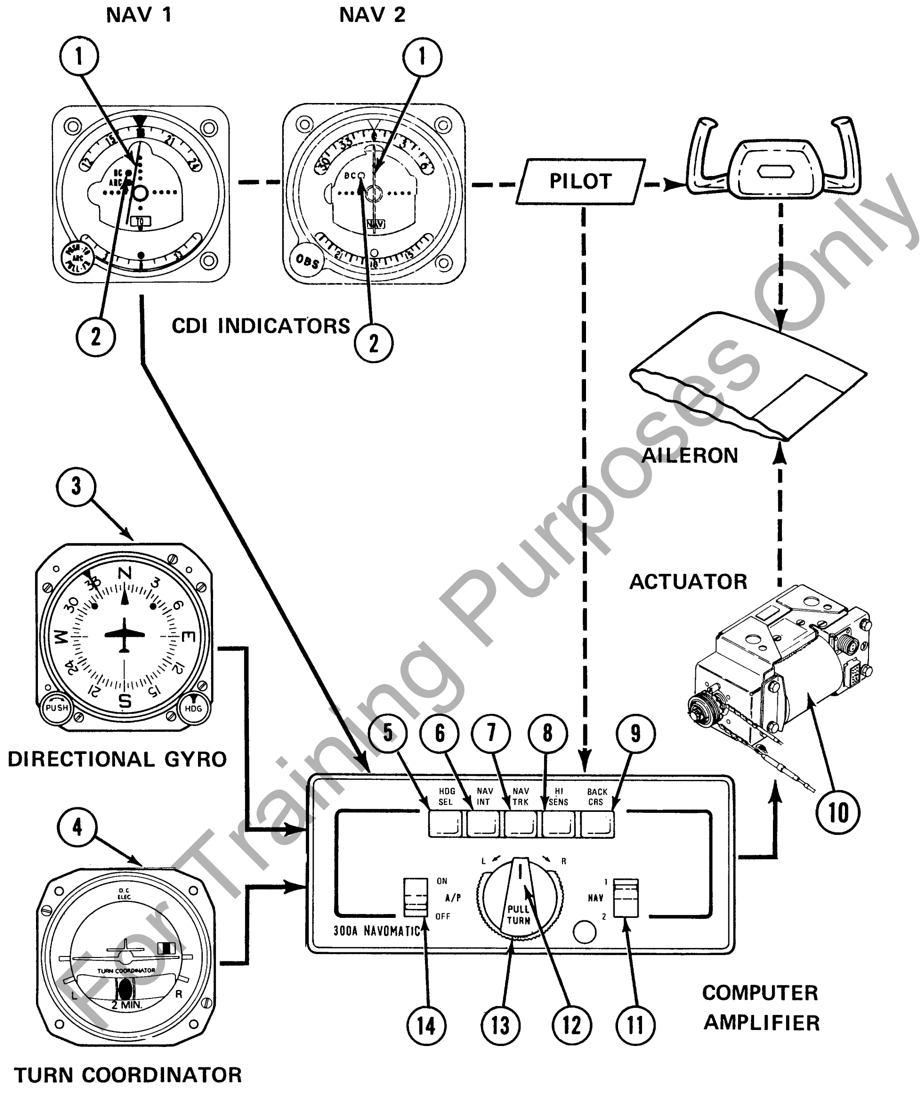


Figure 1. Cessna 300A Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators
(Sheet 1 of 2)

1. COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR - Provides VOR/LOC navigation inputs to autopilot for intercept and tracking modes.

2. LOCALIZER REVERSED INDICATOR LIGHT - Amber light, labeled BC, illuminates when BACK CRS button is pushed in (engaged) and LOC frequency selected. BC light indicates course indicator needle is reversed on selected receiver (when tuned to a localizer frequency). This light is located within the CDI indicator.

3. DIRECTIONAL GYRO INDICATOR - Provides heading information to the autopilot for heading intercept and hold. Heading bug on indicator is used to select desired heading or VOR/LOC course to be flown.

4. TURN COORDINATOR - Senses roll and yaw for wings leveling and command turn functions.

5. HDG SEL PUSHBUTTON - Aircraft will turn to and hold heading selected by the heading "bug" on the directional gyro.

6. NAV INT PUSHBUTTON - When heading "bug" on DG is set to selected course, aircraft will turn to and intercept selected VOR or LOC course.

7. NAV TRK PUSHBUTTON - When heading "bug" on DG is set to selected course, aircraft will track selected VOR or LOC course.

8. HI SENS PUSHBUTTON - During NAV INT or NAV TRK operation, this high sensitivity setting increases autopilot response to NAV signal to provide more precise operation during localizer approach. In low-sensitivity position (pushbutton out), response to NAV signal is dampened for smoother tracking of enroute VOR radials; it also smooths out effect of course scalloping during NAV operation.

9. BACK CRS PUSHBUTTON - Used with LOC operation only. With A/P switch OFF or ON, and when navigation receiver selected by NAV switch is set to a localizer frequency, it reverses normal localizer needle indication (CDI) and causes localizer reversed (BC) light to illuminate. With A/P switch ON, reverses localizer signal to autopilot.

10. ACTUATOR - The torque motor in the actuator causes the ailerons to move in the commanded direction.

11. NAV SWITCH - Selects NAV 1 or NAV 2 navigation receiver.

12. PULL TURN KNOB - When pulled out and centered in detent, airplane will fly wings-level; when turned to the right (R), the airplane will execute a right, standard rate turn; when turned to the left (L), the airplane will execute a left, standard rate turn. When centered in detent and pushed in, the operating mode selected by a pushbutton is engaged.

13. TRIM - Used to trim autopilot to compensate for minor variations in aircraft trim or lateral weight distribution. (For proper operation, the aircraft's rudder trim, if so equipped, must be manually trimmed before the autopilot is engaged.

14. A/P SWITCH - Turns autopilot ON or OFF.

Figure 1. Cessna 300A Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following autopilot limitation must be adhered to:

BEFORE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO OVERRIDE THE AUTOPILOT:

1. Airplane Control Wheel -- ROTATE as required to override autopilot.

NOTE

The servo may be overpowered at any time without damage.

TO TURN OFF AUTOPILOT:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING:

1. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- OFF.
2. BACK CRS Button -- OFF (see Caution note under Nav Intercept).

NOTE

Periodically verify operation of amber warning light(s), labeled BC on CDI(s), by engaging BACK CRS button with a LOC frequency selected.

INFLIGHT WINGS LEVELING:

1. Airplane Rudder Trim -- ADJUST for zero slip ("Ball" centered on Turn Coordinator).
2. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PULL out.
3. A/P ON-OFF Switch -- ON.
4. Autopilot TRIM Control -- ADJUST for zero turn rate (wings level indication on Turn Coordinator).

NOTE

For optimum performance in airplanes equipped as floatplanes, use autopilot only in cruise flight or in approach configuration with flaps down no more than 10° and airspeed no lower than 75 KIAS on 172 and R172 Series Models or 90 KIAS on 180, 185, U206 and TU206 Series Models.

COMMAND TURNS:

1. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER, PULL out and ROTATE.

HEADING SELECT:

1. Directional Gyro -- SET to airplane magnetic heading.
2. Heading Selector Knob -- ROTATE bug to desired heading.
3. Heading Select Button -- PUSH.
4. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PUSH.

NOTE

Airplane will turn automatically to selected heading. If airplane fails to hold the precise heading, readjust autopilot TRIM control as required or disengage autopilot and reset manual rudder trim (if installed).

NAV INTERCEPT (VOR/LOC):

1. PULL-TURN Knob -- CENTER and PULL out.
2. NAV 1-2 Selector Switch -- SELECT desired receiver.
3. Nav Receiver OBS or ARC Knob -- SET desired VOR course (if tracking omni).

NOTE

Optional ARC knob should be in center position and ARC warning light should be off.

4. Heading Selector Knob -- ROTATE bug to selected course (VOR or localizer - inbound or outbound as appropriate).
5. Directional Gyro --SET for magnetic heading.
6. NAV INT Button -- PUSH.
7. HI SENS Button -- PUSH for localizer and "close-in" omni intercepts.
8. BACK CRS Button -- PUSH only if intercepting localizer front course outbound or back course inbound.

CAUTION

With BACK CRS button pushed in and localizer frequency selected, the CDI on selected nav radio will be reversed even when the autopilot switch is OFF.

9. PULL-TURN Knob -- PUSH.

NOTE

Airplane will automatically turn to a 45° intercept angle.

NAV TRACKING (VOR/LOC):

1. NAV TRK Button -- PUSH when CDI centers (within one dot) and airplane is within ± 10° of course heading.
2. HI SENS Button -- Disengage for enroute omni tracking (leave engaged for localizer).

NOTE

Optional ARC feature, if installed, should not be used for autopilot operation. If airplane should deviate off course, pull out PULL TURN knob and readjust airplane rudder trim for straight flight on the turn coordinator. Push in PULL TURN knob and reintercept the course. If deviation persists, progressively make slight adjustments of the autopilot TRIM control towards the course as required to maintain track.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA 400 GLIDE SLOPE (Type R-443B)

SECTION 1 GENERAL

The Cessna 400 Glide Slope is an airborne navigation receiver which receives and interprets glide slope signals from a ground-based Instrument Landing System (ILS). It is used with the localizer function of a VHF navigation system when making instrument approaches to an airport. The glide slope provides vertical path guidance while the localizer provides horizontal track guidance.

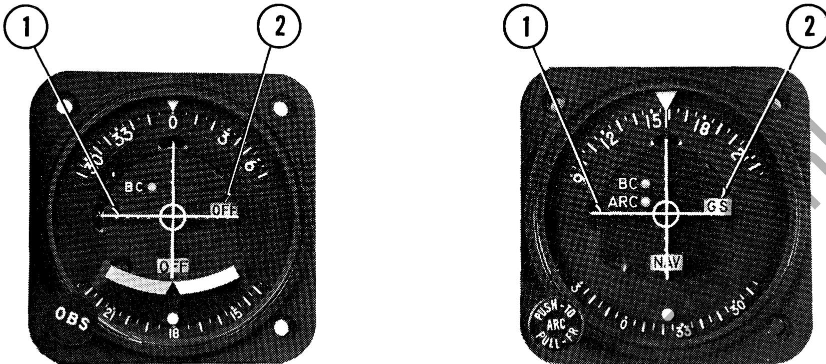
The Cessna 400 Glide Slope system consists of a remote-mounted receiver coupled to an existing navigation system, a panel-mounted indicator and an externally mounted antenna. The glide slope receiver is designed to receive ILS glide slope signals on any of 40 channels. The channels are spaced 150 kHz apart and cover a frequency range of 329.15 MHz through 335.0 MHz. When a localizer frequency is selected on the NAV receiver, the associated glide slope frequency is selected automatically.

Operation of the Cessna 400 Glide Slope system is controlled by the associated navigation system. The functions and indications of typical 300 series glide slope indicators are pictured and described in Figure 1. The 300 series glide slope indicators shown in Figure 1 depict typical indications for Cessna-crafted glide slope indicators. However, refer to the 400 Nav/Com or HSI write-ups if they are listed in this section as options for additional glide slope indicators.

SECTION 2 LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

TYPICAL 300 SERIES GLIDE SLOPE INDICATORS



1. GLIDE SLOPE DEVIATION POINTER - Indicates deviation from normal glide slope.

2. GLIDE SLOPE "OFF" OR "GS" FLAG - When visible, indicates unreliable glide slope signal or improperly operating equipment. The flag disappears when a reliable glide slope signal is being received.

CAUTION

Spurious glide slope signals may exist in the area of the localizer back course approach which can cause the glide slope "OFF" or "GS" flag to disappear and present unreliable glide slope information. Disregard all glide slope signal indications when making a localizer back course approach unless a glide slope (ILS BC) is specified on the approach and landing chart.

Figure 1. Typical 300 Series VOR/LOC/ILS Indicator

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TO RECEIVE GLIDE SLOPE SIGNALS:

NOTE

The pilot should be aware that on many Cessna airplanes equipped with the windshield mounted glide slope antenna, pilots should avoid use of 2700 ±100 RPM on airplanes equipped with a two-bladed propeller or 1800 ±100 RPM on airplanes equipped with a three-bladed propeller during ILS approaches to avoid oscillations of the glide slope deviation pointer caused by propeller interference.

1. NAV Frequency Select Knobs -- SELECT desired localizer frequency (glide slope frequency is automatically selected).
2. NAV/COM VOX-ID-T Switch -- SELECT ID position to disconnect filter from audio circuit.
3. NAV VOL Control -- ADJUST to desired listening level to confirm proper localizer station.

CAUTION

When glide slope "OFF" or "GS" flag is visible, glide slope indications are unusable.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA 400 MARKER BEACON
(Type R-402A)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The system consists of a remote mounted 75 MHz marker beacon receiver, an antenna which is either flush mounted or externally mounted on the under side of the aircraft and operating controls and annunciator lights which are mounted on the front of the audio control panel.

Operating controls for the marker beacon system are supplied on the front of the two types of audio control panels used in this Cessna aircraft. The operating controls for the marker beacon are different on the two audio control panels. One type of audio control panel is supplied with one or two transmitters and the other is supplied with three transmitters.

The marker beacon operating controls and annunciator lights used on the audio control panel supplied with two or less transmitters are shown and described in Figure 1. The operating controls consist of three, three-position toggle switches. One switch is labeled "HIGH/LO/MUTE" and provides the pilot with HIGH-LO sensitivity selection and marker beacon audio muting, for approximately 30 seconds, to enable voice communication to be heard without interference of marker beacon signals. The marker beacon audible tone is automatically restored at the end of the 30 second muting period to continue marker audio for passage over the next marker. Another switch is labeled "SPKR/OFF/PHN" and is used to turn the set on and select the desired speaker or phone position for marker beacon signals. The third toggle switch labeled, "ANN LT", is provided to enable the pilot to select the desired DAY or NITE lighting position for annunciator lights, and also a "TEST" position to verify operation of marker beacon annunciator lights.

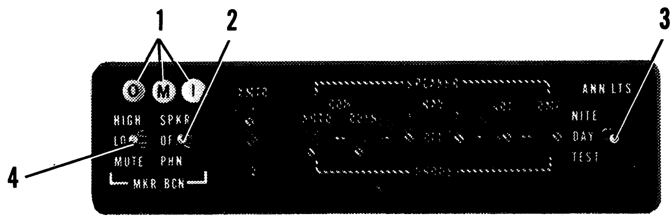
The marker beacon operating controls and annunciator lights used on the audio control panel supplied with three transmitters are shown and described in Figure 2. The operating controls consist of two, three-position toggle switches, and two concentric control knobs. One switch is labeled "SPKR/PHN" and is used to select the desired speaker or phone position for marker beacon signals. The other switch is labeled "HI/LO/TEST" and provides the pilot with HI-LO sensitivity selection and a TEST position to verify operation of all annunciator lights. The small, inner control knob labeled OFF/VOL, turns the set on or off and adjusts the audio listening level. The large, outer control knob labeled BRT, provides light dimming for the marker beacon lights.

When the Cessna 400 Marker Beacon controls are incorporated in an audio control panel incorporated with two or less transmitters a marker Beacon audio level adjustment potentiometer and an annunciator lights minimum dimming potentiometer are mounted on the audio control panel circuit board. Potentiometer adjustments cannot be accomplished externally. However, if readjustments are desired, adjustments can be made in accordance with instructions found in the Avionics Installations Service/Parts Manual for this aircraft.

MARKER FACILITIES

MARKER	IDENTIFYING TONE	LIGHT*
Inner & Fan	Continuous 6 dots/sec (300 Hz)	White
Middle	Alternate dots and dashes (1300 Hz)	Amber
Outer	2 dashes/sec (400 Hz)	Blue

* When the identifying tone is keyed, the respective indicating light will blink accordingly.



AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FOR USE WITH ONE OR TWO TRANSMITTERS

1. MARKER BEACON ANNUNCIATOR LIGHTS:

   OUTER - Light illuminates blue to indicate passage of outer marker beacon.
   MIDDLE - Light illuminates amber to indicate passage of middle marker beacon.
   INNER and FAN - Light illuminates white to indicate passage of inner and fan marker beacon.

2. SPEAKER/OFF/PHONE SELECTOR SWITCH:

   SPEAKER POSITION - Turns set on and selects speaker for aural reception.
   OFF POSITION - Turns set off.
   PHONE POSITION - Turns set on and selects phone for aural reception.

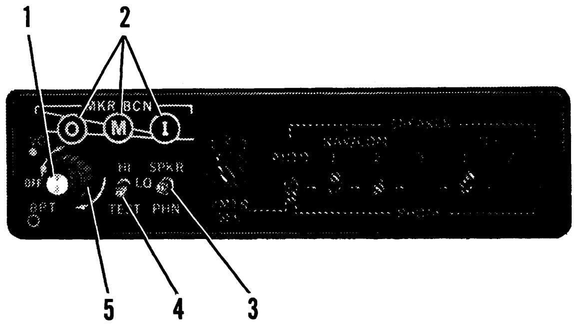
3. ANNUNCIATOR LIGHTS SWITCH:

   NITE POSITION - Places the annunciator lights in a dim lighting mode for night flying operations. Light intensity of the NITE position is controlled by the RADIO LT dimming rheostat.
   DAY POSITION - Places the annunciator lights in the full bright position for daylight flying operations.
   TEST POSITION - Illuminates all marker beacon annunciator lights (and other annunciators) in the full bright position to verify operation of annunciator lights.

4. HIGH/LO/MUTE SELECTOR SWITCH:

   HIGH POSITION - Receiver sensitivity is positioned for airway flying.
   LO POSITION - Receiver sensitivity is positioned for ILS approaches.
   MUTE POSITION - The marker beacon audio signals are temporarily blanked out (for approximately 30 seconds) and then automatically restored, over the speaker or headset in order to provide voice communications without interference of marker beacon signals.

Figure 1. Cessna 400 Marker Beacon Operating Controls and Indicator Lights Supplied with Two or Less Transmitters



AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FOR USE WITH THREE TRANSMITTERS

1. OFF/VOLUME CONTROL:

   OFF/VOL - Turns the set on or off and adjusts the audio listening level. Clockwise rotation of the smaller knob turns the set on and increases the audio level.

2. MARKER BEACON ANNUNCIATOR LIGHTS:

   OUTER - Light illuminates blue to indicate passage of outer marker beacon.
   MIDDLE - Light illuminates amber to indicate passage of middle marker beacon.
   INNER and FAN - Light illuminates white to indicate passage of inner or fan marker beacon.

3. SPEAKER/PHONE SELECTOR SWITCH:

   SPEAKER POSITION - Selects speaker for aural reception.
   PHONE POSITION - Selects headphone for aural reception.

4. HI/LO/TEST SELECTOR SWITCH:

   HI POSITION - Receiver sensitivity is positioned for airway flying.
   LO POSITION - Receiver sensitivity is positioned for ILS approaches.
   TEST POSITION - Illuminates all annunciator lights in the full bright position to verify operation of annunciator lights.

5. LIGHT DIMMING CONTROL:

   BRT - Provides light dimming for the annunciator lights. Clockwise rotation of the larger knob increases light intensity.

Figure 2. Cessna 400 Marker Beacon Operating Controls and Indicator Lights Supplied With Three Transmitters.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

MARKER BEACON OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR USE WITH AUDIO CONTROL PANELS PROVIDED WITH ONE OR TWO TRANSMITTERS (REF. FIG. 1)

1. SPKR/OFF/PHN Selector Switch -- SELECT desired speaker or phone audio. Either selected position will turn set on.
2. NITE/DAY/TEST Selector Switch -- PRESS to TEST position and verify that all marker beacon annunciator lights illuminate full bright to indicate lights are operational.
3. NITE/DAY/TEST Selector Switch -- SELECT desired position for NITE or DAY lighting.
4. HIGH/LO/MUTE Selector Switch -- SELECT HI position for airway flying or LO position for ILS approaches.

NOTE

Press MUTE switch to provide an approximate 30 seconds temporary blanking out of Marker Beacon audio tone. The marker beacon audio tone identifier is automatically restored at the end of the muting period.

NOTE

Due to the short distance typical between the middle marker and inner marker, audio identification of the inner marker may not be possible if muting is activated over the middle marker.

MARKER BEACON OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR USE WITH AUDIO CONTROL PANELS PROVIDED WITH THREE TRANSMITTERS. (REF. FIG. 2)

1. OFF/VOL Control -- TURN to VOL position and adjust to desired listening level. Clockwise rotation increases audio level.
2. HI/LO Sen Switch -- SELECT HI position for airway flying or LO position for ILS approaches.
3. SPKR/PHN Switch -- SELECT speaker or phone audio.
4. BRT Control -- SELECT BRT (full clockwise). ADJUST as desired when illuminated over marker beacon.
5. TEST Switch -- PRESS to TEST position and verify that all marker beacon annunciator lights will illuminate full bright to indicate lights are operational.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

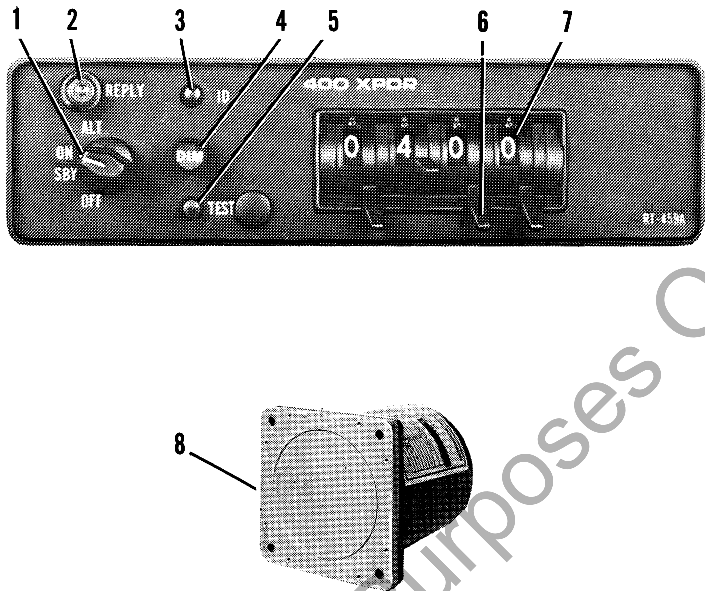
SUPPLEMENT
CESSNA 400 TRANSPONDER (Type RT-459A) AND OPTIONAL ALTITUDE ENCODER (BLIND)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Cessna 400 Transponder (Type RT-459A), shown in Figure 1, is the airborne component of an Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). The transponder enables the ATC ground controller to "see" and identify the aircraft, while in flight, on the control center's radarscope more readily.

The Cessna 400 Transponder system consists of a panel-mounted unit and an externally mounted antenna. The transponder receives interrogating pulse signals on 1030 MHz and transmits pulse-train reply signals on 1090 MHz. The transponder is capable of replying to Mode A (aircraft identification) and also to Mode C (altitude reporting) when coupled to an optional altitude encoder system. The transponder is capable of replying on both modes of interrogation on a selective reply basis on any of 4,096 information code selections. The optional altitude encoder system (not part of a standard 400 Transponder system) required for Mode C (altitude reporting) operation, consists of a completely independent remote-mounted digitizer that is connected to the static system and supplies encoded altitude information to the transponder. When the altitude encoder system is coupled to the 400 Transponder system, altitude reporting capabilities are available in 100-foot increments between -1000 feet and the airplane's maximum service ceiling.

All Cessna 400 Transponder operating controls are located on the front panel of the unit. Functions of the operating controls are described in Figure 1.



1. FUNCTION SWITCH - Controls application of power and selects transponder operating mode as follows:

   OFF - Turns set off.
   SBY - Turns set on for equipment warm-up or standby power.
   ON - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses.
   ALT - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit either Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses or Mode C (altitude reporting) pulses selected automatically by the interrogating signal.

2. REPLY LAMP - Lamp flashes to indicate transmission of reply pulses; glows steadily to indicate transmission of IDENT pulse or satisfactory self-test operation. (Reply lamp will also glow steadily during initial warm-up period.)

Figure 1. Cessna 400 Transponder and Altitude Encoder (Blind) (Sheet 1 of 2)

3. IDENT (ID) SWITCH - When depressed, selects special pulse identifier to be transmitted with transponder reply to effect immediate identification of aircraft on ground controller's display. (Reply lamp will glow steadily during duration of IDENT pulse transmission.)

4. DIMMER (DIM) CONTROL - Allows pilot to control brilliance of reply lamp.

5. SELF-TEST (TEST) SWITCH - When depressed, causes transponder to generate a self-interrogating signal to provide a check of transponder operation. (Reply lamp will glow steadily to verify self-test operation.)

6. REPLY-CODE SELECTOR SWITCHES (4) - Select assigned Mode A reply code.

7. REPLY-CODE INDICATORS (4) - Display selected Mode A reply code.

8. REMOTE-MOUNTED DIGITIZER - Provides an altitude reporting code range of -1000 feet up to the airplane's maximum service ceiling.

Figure 1. Cessna 400 Transponder and Altitude Encoder (Blind) (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the following information must be displayed in the form of a placard located near the altimeter.

ALTITUDE ENCODER EQUIPPED

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO TRANSMIT AN EMERGENCY SIGNAL:

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT 7700 operating code.

TO TRANSMIT A SIGNAL REPRESENTING LOSS OF ALL COMMUNICATIONS (WHEN IN A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT):

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT 7700 operating code for 1 minute; then SELECT 7600 operating code for 15 minutes and then REPEAT this procedure at same intervals for remainder of flight.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKEOFF:

1. Function Switch -- SBY.

TO TRANSMIT MODE A (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT assigned code.

2. Function Switch -- ON.
3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

NOTE

During normal operation with function switch in ON position, reply lamp flashes indicating transponder replies to interrogations.

4. ID Button -- DEPRESS momentarily when instructed by ground controller to "squawk IDENT" (reply lamp wil glow steadily, indicating IDENT operation).

TO TRANSMIT MODE C (ALTITUDE REPORTING) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT assigned code.
2. Function Switch -- ALT.

NOTE

When directed by ground controller to "stop altitude squawk", turn Function Switch to ON for Mode A operation only.

NOTE

Pressure altitude is transmitted by the transponder for altitude squawk and conversion to indicated altitude is done in ATC computers. Altitude squawked will only agree with indicated altitude when the local altimeter setting in use by the ground controller is set in the aircraft altimeter.

3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

TO SELF-TEST TRANSPONDER OPERATION:

1. Function Switch -- SBY and wait 30 seconds for equipment to warm-up.
2. Function Switch -- ON.
3. TEST Button -- DEPRESS (reply lamp should light brightly regardless of DIM control setting).
4. TEST Button -- RELEASE for normal operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

SUPPLEMENT

CESSNA 400 TRANSPONDER (Type RT-459A)

AND

OPTIONAL ENCODING ALTIMETER (Type EA-401A)

SECTION 1

GENERAL

The Cessna 400 Transponder (Type RT-459A), shown in Figure 1, is the airborne component of an Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). The transponder enables the ATC ground controller to "see" and identify the aircraft, while in flight, on the control center's radarscope more readily.

The 400 Transponder consists of a panel-mounted unit and an externally mounted antenna. The transponder receives interrogating pulse signals on 1030 MHz and transmits coded pulse-train reply signals on 1090 MHz. It is capable of replying to Mode A (aircraft identification) and Mode C (altitude reporting) interrogations on a selective reply basis on any of 4,096 information code selections. When an optional panel mounted EA-401A Encoding Altimeter (not part of 400 Transponder System) is included in the avionic configuration, the transponder can provide altitude reporting in 100-foot increments between -1000 and +35,000 feet.

All Cessna 400 Transponder operating controls, with the exception of the optional altitude encoder's altimeter setting knob, are located on the front panel of the unit. The altimeter setting knob is located on the encoding altimeter. Functions of the operating controls are described in Figure 1.

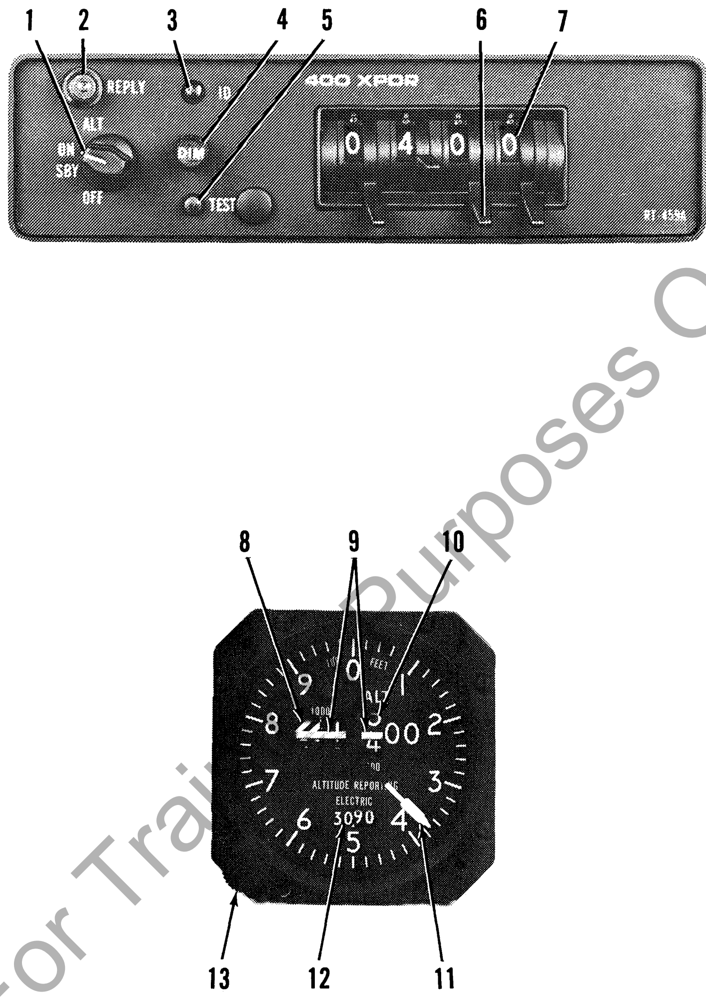


Figure 1. Cessna 400 Transponder and Encoding Altimeter Operating Controls (Sheet 1 of 2)

1. FUNCTION SWITCH - Controls application of power and selects transponder operating mode as follows:

   OFF - Turns set off.
   SBY - Turns set on for equipment warm-up or standby power.
   ON - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses.
   ALT - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit either Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses or Mode C (altitude reporting) pulses selected automatically by the interrogating signal.

2. REPLY LAMP - Lamp flashes to indicate transmission of reply pulses; glows steadily to indicate transmission of IDENT pulse or satisfactory self-test operation. (Reply Lamp will also glow steadily during initial warm-up period.)

3. IDENT (ID) SWITCH - When depressed, selects special pulse identifier to be transmitted with transponder reply to effect immediate identification of aircraft on ground controller's display. (Reply Lamp will glow steadily during duration of IDENT pulse transmission.)

4. DIMMER (DIM) CONTROL - Allows pilot to control brilliance of Reply Lamp.

5. SELF-TEST (TEST) SWITCH - When depressed, causes transponder to generate a self-interrogating signal to provide a check of transponder operation. (Reply Lamp will glow steadily to verify self test operation.)

6. REPLY-CODE SELECTOR SWITCHES (4) - Select assigned Mode A Reply Code.

7. REPLY-CODE INDICATORS (4) - Display selected Mode A Reply Code.

8. 1000-FOOT DRUM TYPE INDICATOR - Provides digital altitude readout in 1000-foot increments between -1000 and +35,000 feet. When altitude is below 10,000 feet, a diagonally striped flag appears in the 10,000-foot window.

9. OFF INDICATOR WARNING FLAG - Flag appears across altitude readout when power is removed from altimeter to indicate that readout is not reliable.

10. 100-FOOT DRUM TYPE INDICATOR - Provides digital altitude readout in 100-foot increments between 0 feet and 1000 feet.

11. 20-FOOT INDICATOR NEEDLE - Indicates altitude in 20-foot increments between 0 feet and 1000 feet.

12. ALTIMETER SETTING SCALE - DRUM TYPE - Indicates selected altimeter setting in the range of 27.9 to 31.0 inches of mercury on the standard altimeter or 950 to 1050 millibars on the optional altimeter.

13. ALTIMETER SETTING KNOB - Dials in desired altimeter setting in the range of 27.9 to 31.0 inches of mercury on standard altimeter or 950 to 1050 millibars on the optional altimeter.

Figure 1. Cessna 400 Transponder and Encoding Altimeter Operating Controls (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the encoding altimeter used in this installation does have a limitation that requires a standard barometric altimeter be installed as a back-up altimeter.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO TRANSMIT AN EMERGENCY SIGNAL:

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT 7700 operating code.

TO TRANSMIT A SIGNAL REPRESENTING LOSS OF COMMUNICATIONS (WHEN IN A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT):

1. Function Switch -- ON.
2. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT 7700 operating code for 1 minute; then SELECT 7600 operating code for 15 minutes and then REPEAT this procedure at same intervals for remainder of flight.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKEOFF:

1. Function Switch -- SBY.

TO TRANSMIT MODE A (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT assigned code.

2. Function Switch -- ON.
3. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

NOTE

During normal operation with function switch in ON position, REPLY lamp flashes indicating transponder replies to interrogations.

4. ID Button -- DEPRESS momentarily when instructed by ground controller to "squawk IDENT" (REPLY lamp will glow steadily, indicating IDENT operation).

TO TRANSMIT MODE C (ALTITUDE REPORTING) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Off Indicator Warning Flag -- VERIFY that flag is out of view on encoding altimeter.
2. Altitude Encoder Altimeter Setting Knob -- SET IN assigned local altimeter setting.
3. Reply-Code Selector Switches -- SELECT assigned code.
4. Function Switch -- ALT.

NOTE

When directed by ground controller to "stop altitude squawk", turn Function Switch to ON for Mode A operation only.

NOTE

Pressure altitude is transmitted by the transponder for altitude squawk and conversion to indicated altitude is done in ATC computers. Altitude squawked will only agree with indicated altitude when the local altimeter setting in use by the ground controller is set in the encoding altimeter.

5. DIM Control -- ADJUST light brilliance of reply lamp.

TO SELF-TEST TRANSPONDER OPERATION:

1. Function Switch -- SBY and wait 30 seconds for equipment to warm-up.
2. Function Switch -- ON or ALT.
3. TEST Button -- DEPRESS and HOLD (Reply lamp should light with full brilliance regardless of DIM control setting).
4. TEST Button -- RELEASE for normal operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or several related external antennas, will result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.